

LATIN
PROSE COMPOSITION

HENRY CARR PEARSON

760f

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION

760f

P 361

A. S. Allen

GIFT OF ~~THE PUBLISHER~~

No. 1787

Received 1906

LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA.

GIFT OF

Class

760f
P 361

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

Aug 24





LATIN

PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON, A.B., HARVARD
HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE, NEW YORK



NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

COPYRIGHT, 1903, BY
HENRY CARR PEARSON.

ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL, LONDON.

PEARSON. LATIN PROSE.

W. P. I

TO THE
LIBRARY OF
ANGLO-AMERICAN

PA2087
P354
1903
MAIN

PREFACE

THIS book has been prepared in response to the numerous requests I have received from those teachers who are using my Greek Prose Composition. It is an attempt (1) to combine a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Latin syntax with abundant practice in translating English into Latin; and (2) to afford constant practice in writing Latin at sight.

Part I contains, in graded lessons, the principal points of Latin syntax, the unusual and non-essential being purposely omitted. These lessons are designed for use at the beginning of the second year's study of Latin, thereby serving as a partial review of the first year's work and as an introduction to the composition work in connection with the prose authors read subsequently.

Part II contains short, simple English sentences based on Books I-IV of Caesar's Gallic War. In Books I and II short, model sentences and phrases are selected from the Latin text, so as to direct the student's attention more forcibly to the actual Latin usages.

Part III presents disconnected English sentences based upon Cicero's Catiline, I, and connected English based upon Cicero's Catiline, II-IV, Pompey's Military Command, Archias, Marcellus, and Ligarius. There are also carefully graded exercises for general review preparatory to college entrance examinations.

At intervals in Parts I and II review lessons are introduced, containing each a list of the important words and an enumeration of the principal constructions used in the preceding sections. The instructor is urged to form original sentences for his class to translate at sight into Latin based upon these words and constructions. While, strictly speaking, this is not sight work, yet it enables the student to make definite preparation for this kind of work, and gives him valuable practice in the offhand use of words and principles of grammar.

The sentences at the beginning of Part III are comparatively easy, so that Part II may be omitted, if the instructor has not time enough to complete the entire book. The best results, however, will be obtained from a completion of all the work here given.

I take this occasion to thank Albert I. Oliver, Instructor in Latin, Kent's Hill Seminary, Maine, and W. S. Burrage, Ph.D., of Cambridge, Massachusetts, for reading the manuscript of Part I. I am especially indebted to Miss Emeline B. Bartlett, Instructor in Latin and Greek in this school, for the valuable criticism and assistance that she has given me throughout the preparation of this book.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

CONTENTS

PART I

LESSON	PAGE
1. Agreement of Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs	7
2. The Accusative Case	10
3. The Genitive Case	12
4. The Dative Case	16
5. The Ablative Case	19
6. Review and Sight Practice	24
7. Pronouns : Demonstrative, Personal, Reflexive, Possessive .	25
8. Pronouns (<i>continued</i>) : Relative, Indefinite, Correlatives .	30
9. Questions : Answers : Connectives	35
10. The Participle : Its Uses and Tenses	39
11. Gerund and Gerundive. The Periphrastic Conjugations. Supine	44
12. Review and Sight Practice	47
13. Tenses of Indicative, Subjunctive, and Infinitive. Delibera- tive Subjunctive. How to express "Ought," "Must" .	49
14. Commands, Exhortations, Prohibitions. How to express "May," "Can," "Might," etc.	53
15. Conditions and Wishes	56
16. Sequence of Tenses. Indirect Questions. Construction after Verbs of Fearing and Doubting	60
17. Review and Sight Practice	64
18. Subjunctive of Purpose and Result. Object Clauses . . .	65
19. Construction after Verbs of Hindering and Refusing. Tem- poral Clauses	69
20. Indirect Discourse. Simple Sentences	73
21. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences	78
22. Concession. Proviso. Cause. Characteristic. Review of Relative Clauses	82
23. Review and Sight Practice	86

PART II

	PAGE
Exercises based on Caesar, Book I	87
Exercises based on Caesar, Book II	118
Exercises based on Caesar, Book III	146
Exercises based on Caesar, Book IV	159

PART III

First Oration against Catiline	175
Second Oration against Catiline	187
Third Oration against Catiline	195
Fourth Oration against Catiline	201
Pompey's Military Command	207
The Citizenship of Archias	220
The Oration for Marcellus	226
The Oration for Ligarius	229
Exercises for General Review	232
 ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	 239
 GRAMMATICAL INDEX	 255

PART I

LESSON I

AGREEMENT OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, VERBS

1. **Apposition.** — A noun in apposition with another noun agrees with it in *case*, and, when it is possible, in *gender* and *number*.

Servius rēx, *Servius the king*.

quattuor hīc p̄imum ōmen equōs vīdī, *here I saw four horses, the first omen*.

2. A noun in apposition with a possessive pronoun or adjective may be in the *genitive*, because the possessive implies a genitive.

nōmen meum absentis, *my name in my absence* (i.e. *the name of me absent*).

3. A noun in apposition is often expressed in English by a clause of time, cause, etc.:

litterās Graecās senex didicī, *I learned Greek when an old man*.

4. A predicate noun is one connected with the subject by some form of the verb **sum** or a similar verb (i.e. **fiō**, *become*; **videor**, *seem*; **maneō**, *remain*; **creor**, *be elected*; **appellor**, *be called*; **habeor**, *be held, regarded*):

pater et avus mortuī sunt, his father and grandfather are dead.

senātus populusque Rōmānus voluit, the senate and people of Rome ordained.

9. A collective noun commonly takes a verb in the singular, but the plural is often used when *individuals* are thought of :

senātus haec intellegit, the senate is aware of this.

cum tanta multitudō lapidēs conicerent, when such a crowd was throwing stones.

10. When the subjects differ in *person*, the verb agrees with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third :

sī tū et Tullia valētis, ego et Cicerō valēmus, if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

AGREEMENT OF VERBS, SECTIONS 8-10

[H. 389, 392; (461, 463); LM. 469-474; A. 205; G. 211, 287; B. 254, 255.]

11. Translate :

1. When a girl, she was considered wise.
2. You¹ and I will do this.
3. A part of the soldiers were put to flight.
4. Your sister and brother have come.
5. They gave it to Caesar, the consul.
6. The boy and his sister were very brave.
7. I heard of² your bravery when a youth.
8. Zeal and patience have been called virtues.
9. Two thousand men had been seen in the town.
10. A multitude of soldiers were on the wall.

¹ See example under 10 for order of pronouns.

² *dē* with ablative.

LESSON 2

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE

12. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative :

librum scripsit, *he wrote a book.*

13. The meaning of a verb, even of one ordinarily intransitive, may be emphasized or more exactly defined by adding an accusative of kindred derivation. This is called the *Cognate accusative*, and is usually modified by an adjective :

tutam vitam vivere, *to lead a secure life.*

14. Many verbs of *making, choosing, calling, showing*, and the like, may take two accusatives, — one of the person or thing affected, the other a predicate accusative :

urbem Rōmam vocāvit, *he called the city Rome.*

15. Some verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching, and concealing* may take two accusatives — one of the person, and one of the thing :

pācem tē poscimus, *we demand peace of you.*

1. Some of these verbs may take the ablative of the person with a preposition instead of the accusative. So, generally, **petō (ab)**, *seek (from)*; **postulō (ab)**, *demand (of)*; **quaerō (ab, dē, ex)**, *ask (of)*:

quaerit ex sōlō ea, *he asks him in private about those things.*

pācem ā vōbīs petimus, *we implore peace from you.*

16. The accusative is used to express the *duration* of *time* or the *extent* of *space* :

fossās quīdecim pedēs lātās, *trenches fifteen feet broad.*

quadrāgintā annōs vīxit, *he lived forty years.*

1. Emphasis is sometimes given by using the preposition **per**, as :

lūdī per decem diēs, *games for ten days.*

17. Proper names of towns and of small islands or peninsulas are put in the accusative to denote the *end* or *limit* toward which the motion of the verb is directed :

missī lēgātī Athēnās sunt, *ambassadors were sent to Athens.*

1. The accusatives **domum** and **rūs** are used like proper names of towns :

domum reductus est, *he was conducted home.*

ego rūs ibō, *I shall go into the country.*

2. Other designations of place than those mentioned above require a preposition (**in** or **ad**) to denote the limit of motion :

in Ītaliā vēnit, *he came into Italy.*

legiōnēs ad urbem addūcit, *he is leading the legions to (or toward) the city.*

3. When **domum** is modified in any way, except by a possessive pronoun or a genitive, the preposition **in** is commonly used :

in illam domum, *into that house.*

domōs suās, *to their homes.*

18. An exclamation, if limited by an adjective or a genitive, may be expressed by the accusative :

mē miserum, ah, wretched me! or *dear, dear me!*
ō fallācem spem, oh, deceptive hope!

REFERENCES FOR ACCUSATIVE

[H. 403-421; (370-381); LM. 495-524; A. 237-240, 258; G. 329-343; B. 172-185.]

19. Translate:

1. Caesar asked them for grain.
2. They will choose him consul.
3. Dear me, I am going to Rome!
4. We will demand of them fifty ships.
5. She remained in the city for ten days.
6. They made a wall fifteen feet high.
7. He set out for his home.
8. For many days he concealed the deed from his father.
9. The enemy marched into Italy.
10. The boy and his mother were free.

LESSON 3

THE GENITIVE CASE

20. The genitive is ordinarily used to express the dependence of one noun upon another. This relation is often, but not always, expressed in English by *of* or *'s* or *s'*:

Alexandri equus, Alexander's horse, or the horse of Alexander.

21. If a noun of *action* or *feeling* is limited by another noun, the dependent genitive expresses either

1. the subject of the action or feeling, and is called the *subjective genitive*:

amor patris, the love of a father, or a father's love (i.e. the love felt by a father); or

2. the object of the action or feeling, called the *objective genitive*:

amor patris, *love for father* (i.e. *the love toward a father*).

22. The genitive is used to denote *quality*, but only when the limiting noun is modified by an adjective:

vir summae virtūtis, *a man of the highest courage*.

1. If the noun expressing the quality is not modified, the idea of quality is expressed by an adjective rather than a genitive. For example, "a man of courage" is not to be rendered **vir virtūtis**, but **vir fortis**.

23. **Genitive of the Whole, or Partitive Genitive.** — The genitive is used to express the whole of which a part is taken:

duo milia peditum, *two thousand foot soldiers*.

minus dubitātiōnis, *less hesitation*.

The following are a few of the common words followed by this construction:

plūs, *more*.

plūrimum, *most*.

multum, *much*.

minus, *less*.

paulum, *little*.

nihil, *nothing*.

satis, *enough*.

parum, *not enough*.

quod, quid, *which, what*.

aliquid, *something*.

1. Numerals and **quīdam** are generally followed by **ex** or **dē** and the ablative, rather than a partitive genitive. Also occasionally other words:

ūnus ex militibus, *one of the soldiers*.

paucī dē nostris cadunt, *a few of our men fall*.

24. The genitive is used with many adjectives to *limit the extent of their application*. Such adjectives are those

signifying *desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fullness*, and their opposites :

peritus bellī, *skilled in war.*

cupidus rērum novārum, *eager for revolution.*

Some of the common adjectives of this class are :

cupidus, *eager, desirous.*

cōnsciūs, *conscious, aware.*

peritus, *experienced, skillful.*

insuētus, *unaccustomed, inexperienced.*

plēnus, *full.*

memor, *mindful, remembering.*

expers, *having no part, free from.*

potēns, *ruling, controlling.*

particeps, *sharing.*

25. Verbs of *remembering* and *forgetting* — **meminī**, **reminīscor**, and **oblivīscor** — generally take

1. the genitive when referring to *persons* :

oblītus sum meī, *I have forgotten myself.*

2. sometimes the genitive, and sometimes the accusative, when referring to *things*. The object is regularly accusative when it is a neuter pronoun :

meministine nōmina, *do you remember the names ?*

reminīscere veteris incommodī, *remember the former disaster.*

haec meminī, *I remember this.*

26. Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting*, take the genitive to express the charge :

accūsātus est prōditiōnis, *he was charged with treason.*

27. The impersonal verbs **paenitet**, *repent* ; **miseret**, *pity* ; **taedet**, *be weary* ; **puDET**, *be ashamed* ; **piGET**, *disgusts*, take the accusative to express the *person affected*, and the

genitive to express the *person or thing toward whom the feeling is directed*:

tui mē miseret, *I pity you* (literally, *it pities me of you*).
eum taedet vitae, *he is tired of life*.

1. **misereor** also governs the genitive :

miserēmini sociōrum, *pity the allies*.

28. **interest** and **rēfert**, *it interests or concerns* take the genitive of the person concerned; but in the case of the personal pronoun the ablative singular feminine of the possessive is generally used :

patris interest, *it concerns the father*.

magis rei pūblicae interest quam meā, *it concerns the public welfare more than me*.

29. A few neuter adjectives of quantity are put in the genitive with verbs of valuing to denote the amount of estimation. Such genitives are :

māgnī, plūris, plūrimī; parvī, minōris, minimī; tantī, quanti.

The common verbs with which these genitives are used are : **aestimō, faciō, putō, habeo**, and **sum** :

ea māgnī aestimantur, *those things are highly valued* (literally, *those things are estimated of great (value)*).

est mihi tantī, *it is worth my while* (literally, *it is of so much to me*).

REFERENCES FOR GENITIVES

[H. 437-458 ; (393-410) ; LM. 549-592 ; A. 213-222 ; G. 360-382 ; B. 194-211.]

30. Translate:

1. They were very skillful in military affairs.¹
2. He forgot his name.
3. Love for his country made him brave.
4. They asked him his brother's name.
5. He was a man of great size, but not of courage.
6. She has enough money.
7. Five of the soldiers went to Athens.
8. She pities them.
9. How valuable is that book?
10. This interests him very much.

LESSON 4

THE DATIVE CASE

31. **Indirect Object.**—The dative is used to express the object that is *indirectly affected* by the action of the verb:

hanc pecūniam mihi dat, *he gives me this money* (**pecūniam** is the direct, and **mihi** the indirect object).

1. With certain verbs that imply motion it is often difficult to distinguish between the dative of the indirect object and the accusative of the limit of motion (cf. 17). Generally the accusative (with or without a preposition) is used when the idea of motion prevails:

litterās quās ad Pompēium scripsi, *the letter which I have written (and sent) to Pompey.*

mihi litterās mittere, *to send a letter to me.*

32. Most verbs signifying to *favor, help, please, trust*, and their contraries; also to *believe, persuade, command*,

¹ **rēs militāris.**

obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, and spare, take the dative.

Some of the more common of these verbs are :

persuādeō, *persuade.*

pāreō, *obey.*

parcō, *spare.*

imperō, *order.*

resistō, *resist.*

fidō, **cōnfidō**, *trust.*

licet, *it is permitted.*

crēdō, *believe, trust.*

faveō, *favor.*

placeō, *please.*

ignōscō, *pardon.*

invidēō, *envy.*

noceō, *harm.*

studeō, *be eager for.*

cūr mihi invidēs, *why do you envy me?*

huic imperat, *he orders him.*

1. Some verbs apparently of the same meaning govern the accusative ; such as **iubeō**, *order* ; **dēlectō**, *please* ; **iuvō**, **adiuvō**, *help* ; **laedō**, *injure*.

2. If these verbs are used in the passive, the dative is retained and the verbs are impersonal :

nōbīs persuādētur, *we are persuaded.*

33. Most verbs compounded with **ad**, **ante**, **con**, **in**, **inter**, **ob**, **post**, **prae**, **prō**, **sub**, **super**, and sometimes **circum**, govern the dative case. If transitive, such verbs may take an accusative besides :

cōnsiliīs obstare, *to oppose plans.*

pecūniae pudōrem antepōnit, *he puts honor before money.*

34. **Dative of Possession.**—The English verb *have* is often expressed in Latin by the dative and some form of **sum**. The possessor is expressed by the dative, and the object possessed is the subject of **sum**.

The English sentence, "The master has a book," may be expressed in either of the following ways:

1. *magistrō est liber.*
2. *magister habet librum.*

35. The dative is used with many adjectives of *fitness, nearness, likeness, service, inclination*, and their opposites.

Some of the more common adjectives are:

similis, like.

dissimilis, unlike.

adversus, opposite.

inīquus, not equal to.

proximus, next to.

ūtilis, useful to.

idōneus, suitable for.

aptus, suitable for.

pār, equal to.

aequus, equal to.

amicus, friendly.

cārus, dear.

familiāris, friendly to.

aliēnus, unfavorable, foreign.

castris idōneum locum, a place suitable for a camp.

filius patrī similis, a son like his father.

1. *Similis* and a few others also sometimes govern the genitive (cf. 24).

36. **Dative of Reference.** — The dative is used to denote the person to whom the thought of the sentence is of special interest. This dative is translated into English in a variety of ways:

laudāvit mihi frātre[m], he praised my brother. (*mihi* shows that it was out of regard for me, while *meum* would imply no such motive.)

nōbis divitēs esse volumus, we wish to be rich for ourselves.

37. **Dative of Purpose or End.** — The dative is often used to denote the *purpose, use, or result* of a thing, often

with another dative of the person *for whom*. This construction is most common with the verb **sum** :

māgnō ūsuī nostris fuit, *it was a great help to our men*
(literally, *it was for a great help to our men*).

tertiam aciem nostris subsidiō mīsit, *he sent the third line as a relief to our men*.

The datives most frequently used are: **ūsui**, **subsidiō**, **praesidiō**, **auxiliō**, **cūrae**, **mūnerī**, **odiō**, **bonō**, **impedimentō**.

REFERENCES FOR DATIVES

[H. 422-436; (382-392); LM. 525-548; A. 224-236; G. 344-359; B. 186-193.]

38. Translate :

1. You and your sister gave him this.
2. The soldiers obey the general.
3. He wrote a letter to his mother.
4. Caesar was persuaded.
5. The wall will be a great hindrance to the enemy.
6. He put¹ an officer in charge of the legion.
7. The farmer had² fertile fields.
8. There was a hill opposite the town.
9. My³ brother went to Corinth.
10. He took the lead of all his friends.

LESSON 5

THE ABLATIVE CASE

39. Verbs indicating *separation* or *privation* take an ablative to denote the thing from which the separation takes place. A preposition, **ab** or **ex**, is often used with

¹ Put in charge of = **praeficiō**.

² Do not use the verb **habēō**.

³ Do not use **meus**; express the idea in another way.

these verbs, and regularly when the ablative denotes a person :

māgnō mē metū liberābis, *you will free me from great fear.*

sēcernantur ā nōbīs, *let them be separated from us.*

auxiliō eget, *he needs help.*

dē prōvinciā dēcēdere, *to withdraw from one's province.*

40. The ablative, with or without a preposition, **dē**, **ex**, or **ab**, is used to denote the *source* from which a thing is derived, or the *material* of which it consists.

Source — amplissimō genere nātus, *born of an influential family.*

Material (**ex** is regularly used) — pōcula **ex** aurō, *cups of gold.* An adjective could also be used, as pōcula aurea. Also a genitive of material, pōcula aurī.

41. The ablative with **ā** or **ab** is used with passive verbs to denote the *personal agent* ;

ab hīs fit initium, *a beginning is made by them.*

42. An ablative may be used with a comparative instead of **quam**, *than*, and a nominative or accusative :

patria mihi vitā cārīor est, *my country is dearer to me than life* (*quam vitā* could be used instead of *vitā*).

tuī studiōsior sum quam illius, *I am fonder of you than of him* (here the ablative could not be used).

43. The ablative may denote the *cause*, *means*, or *instrument* :

fortūnā amīcī gaudeō, *I rejoice at the good fortune of my friend* (i.e. *on account of*, etc.).

lacte atque pecore vivunt, *they live upon milk and flesh* (i.e. *by means of* milk and flesh).

1. The ablative of the *agent* (which requires *ā* or *ab*) must be carefully distinguished from the ablative of *means* or *instrument*, which uses no preposition. See 41.

44. The deponent verbs *ūtor*, *use*; *fruor*, *enjoy*; *fungor*, *perform*; *potior*, *get possession of*; *vescor*, *eat*; and their compounds, govern the ablative:

vītā fruitur, *he enjoys life.*

45. The ablative, with or without *cum*, may be used to express the *manner* of an action. If the noun is modified by an adjective, *cum* is often omitted, otherwise *cum* is regularly used.

Allobroges māgnā cum cūrā suōs finis tuentur, *the Allobroges guard their own territory with great care.* (Note the position of *cum*; *māgnā curā* would also mean *with great care.*)

cum celeritāte vēnit, *he came with speed (speedily).*

1. Some nouns that are unmodified express manner without *cum*:

iūre, *rightly.*

iniūriā, *wrongly.*

vī, *by force, forcibly.*

cōnsiliō, *on purpose.*

casū, *by chance.*

cōnsuētūdine, *mōre*, *according to custom.*

46. To denote *accompaniment*, the ablative is used with *cum*. But *cum* is often omitted in military expressions where an adjective is used:

cum comitātibus profectus est, *he set out with his attendants.*

47. Ablative of Specification. — The ablative is used with nouns, verbs, and adjectives to show that *in respect to which* the statement applies :

reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, *they excel the rest of the Gauls in courage.*

claudus pede, *lame in his foot.*

1. Note the phrases :

minor nātū, *younger* (literally, *less in respect to age or birth*).

māior nātū, *older.*

2. On this principle the adjectives **dignus** and **indignus** govern the ablative :

dignī honōre, *worthy of honor.*

48. Ablative of Degree of Difference. — With words expressing comparison the ablative is used to denote the amount or degree of difference between the objects. Especially common are the ablatives **paulō**, *little* ; **multō**, *much* ; **tantō**, **quantō**, **hōc**, **quō**.

tribus pedibus altior, *three feet higher* (literally, *higher by three feet*).

multō mē vigilāre ācrius, *that I watch much more sharply* (literally, *more sharply by much*).

49. Ablative of Quality. — The ablative, modified by an adjective or genitive, is used to denote quality :

summā virtūte adulēscēns, *a youth of the highest worth.*

1. The genitive case likewise may describe a noun, or express quality. See 22.

50. The Ablative of Price. — The definite price of a thing is expressed by the ablative :

servum quinque minis ēmit, he bought the slave for five minae.

1. For the genitive of indefinite price, see 29.

51. **Ablative of Time.** — The ablative is used to express

1. Time *when* an action takes place :

posterō diē movet castra, on the next day he moves his camp.

2. Time *within which* an action takes place. The preposition **in** is sometimes used :

his paucis diēbus, within these few days.

1. For the accusative of the *duration* of time, see 16.

52. The ablative absolute is explained in the lesson on the participle. See 89.

REFERENCES FOR ABLATIVE

[H. 459-487; (411-429); LM. 596-655; A. 242-253; G. 384-408; B. 213-226.]

53. Translate :

1. Rome was much larger than Corinth.
2. For five days they refrained from battle.
3. She was born of a German family.
4. It is very important¹ for me to remember this.
5. He performed his task very carefully.
6. On the third day, through the bravery of his troops, Caesar got possession of the town.
7. This river is two feet wider than that one.²
8. Aspasia was famous for her wisdom.
9. Our ancestors were men of great ability.
10. He was slain by a sword by one of the soldiers.

¹ See 29.

² Omit.

LESSON 6

REVIEW AND SIGHT PRACTICE

54. Review the principles of syntax in sections 1-51.

55. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words:

1. faciō.	25. petō.
2. fugō. ¹	26. rūs.
3. soror.	27. mittō.
4. frāter.	28. postulō.
5. habeō.	29. mūrus.
6. miles.	30. maneō.
7. dō.	31. proficiscor.
8. studium.	32. satis.
9. videō.	33. parum.
10. opus.	34. miseret.
11. cēlō.	35. pudet.
12. frūmentum.	36. persuādeō.
13. peritus.	37. crēdō.
14. cupidus.	38. imperō.
15. memini. ²	39. dēlectō.
16. reminiscor.	40. liberō.
17. obliviscor.	41. egeō.
18. similis.	42. fungor.
19. praesidium.	43. potior.
20. ūsus.	44. finis.
21. mille. ³	45. adulēscēns.
22. creō.	46. nāscor.
23. poscō.	47. clārus.
24. quaerō.	48. nanciscor.

¹ Do not confuse this with fugiō.

² Perfect in form, but present in meaning.

³ Look up its declension.

56. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs in 55.

57. Let the instructor form several original sentences in English from the words in 55, illustrating the grammatical principles of 1-51. These sentences may be given for oral drill or a written exercise.

LESSON 7

PRONOUNS: DEMONSTRATIVE, PERSONAL, REFLEXIVE, POSSESSIVE

58. Demonstrative pronouns point out what object is referred to, and show whether it is *here* or *there*.

They are:

1. *hic, this* (i.e. *the object that is near where I am*).
2. *iste, that* (*that near you*).
3. *ille, that* (*that yonder, over there, not near the speaker*).

59. *Hic* is, therefore, called the demonstrative of the *first person*. It is used as follows:

1. To point out the object that is near the speaker (in time, place, thought; or on the written page).

2. To refer to the *present* as contrasted with the *past*:

haec tempora, modern times, present times.

3. To refer to what follows:

ēius belli haec fuit causa, the cause of this war was as follows.

4. Sometimes to refer to what precedes:

his Caesar ita respondit, to them (the persons just mentioned) *Caesar thus replied.*

5. In reference to two objects previously mentioned, *hic* generally refers to the latter one, and is translated,

the latter. **Ille** refers to the former, and is translated, *the former*.

[H. 505-507; (450); LM. 1049-1055; A. 102, a, b; G. 305-307; B. 246.]¹

60. **Iste** is called the demonstrative of the second person. It often implies contempt, as :

iste Manlius, *that (fellow) Manlius of yours*.

[H. 507, 3; (450); LM. 1053; A. 102, c; G. 306; B. 246, 4.]

61. **Ille** is called the demonstrative of the third person. It is often translated :

1. *The former* [see 59, 5].

2. *That well-known, that notorious, that famous*, etc. :

Māgnus ille Alexander, *that famous Alexander the Great*.

(Note the position of **ille**.)

62. Learn the following adverbs of place :

PLACE WHERE

hic, *here*.

istīc, *there*.

illīc, *there*.

PLACE TO WHICH

hūc, *hither*.

istūc, *thither*.

illūc, *thither*.

PLACE FROM WHICH

hinc, *hence*.

istinc, *thence*.

illinc, *thence*.

63. The determinative pronoun **is**, **ea**, **id**, *that*, is not as strong as **ille**. It is used

I. As a pronoun of the third person, meaning *he, she, it, they*, when one needs to be expressed. See 64.

As an antecedent of the relative, **is quī**, *he, who*, etc.

¹ Grammatical reference will now be given, as far as is possible, after each section.

2. The English expression "that of" is not expressed by **is** and a genitive, but by a genitive alone or by the repetition of the noun to which "that" refers:

in exercitū Sullae et posteā in Crassī fuerat, *he had been in the army of Sulla, and afterwards in that of Crassus.*

3. **Is** has often the force of **tālis**, *such*:

nōn sum is quī terrear, *I am not such a person as to be frightened.*

[H. 508; (451); LM. 1056-1058; A. 102, d; G. 308; B. 247.]

64. The personal pronouns **ego**, *I*; **tū**, *you*; **is**, *ea*, **id**, *he, she, it*, are used as subjects only to show emphasis or avoid ambiguity; **tē vocō**, *I'm calling you*; but **ego tē vocō**, *I (emphatic) am calling you* (such emphasis might be expressed in English by the translation, "It is I who am calling you").

1. The genitive forms **meī**, **tuī**, **sui**, **vestrī**, **nostrī**, are chiefly used as objective genitives. See 21, 2. The genitive plural forms in **-ūm** (**nostrūm**, **vestrūm**) are generally used as partitive genitives:

dēsiderium vestrī, *longing for you.*

nēmō vestrūm, *no one of you.*

2. Never express *my, your, our*, etc., by the genitive of the pronoun. Use the proper possessive adjective. See 67.

[H. 500; (446, N, 3); LM. 456, 1041; A. 194; G. 304; B. 242.]

65. A reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the sentence. There are two uses.

1. It may refer to the subject of the clause in which it stands (direct reflexive):

sē videt, *he sees himself.*

2. It may be used in a subordinate clause and refer, not to the subject of its own clause, but to the subject of the principal clause (indirect reflexive):

cum intellegeret sibi bellum gerendum, when he perceived that he must wage war. (Sibi refers to the subject of intellegeret.)

66. The personal pronouns of the first and second person are also used as reflexives. But there is a special reflexive for the third person:

suī, etc., himself, herself, itself; (plural) themselves.

[H. 174, 502; (448, 449); LM. 1042-1046; A. 196; G. 309, 520, 521; B. 244.]

67. The possessive pronouns are:

meus, my, mine; noster, our, ours; tuus, your, yours; vester, your, yours (plural); suus, his, hers, its, their, theirs (reflexive).

Note the following:

1. They are all declined like adjectives of the first and second declension, and agree in gender, number, and case with the noun to which they belong, and not with the noun to which they refer:

suam mātrem occīdit, he slew his own mother.

2. They are generally not expressed in Latin, except for the purpose of clearness:

videō patrem, I see my father. (To express I see your father it would be necessary to use videō tuum patrem.)

3. The possessive pronouns of the third person in English, *his, hers, its, their*, may refer either to the subject of the verb (*i.e.* be reflexive), or refer to some other person

than the subject. When reflexive, **suus** must be used, otherwise use the genitive of **is** :

laudāvit suum frātrem, *he praised his brother*. (**eius frātre**m would mean *his brother*, but some one else's brother.)

[H. 176, 501, 502, 503, 1; (447, 449, 1. 1); LM. 271, 1048; A. 196, h, 197; G. 309, 312; B. 243, 86.]

68. Reciprocal Pronouns.—The Latin has no special reciprocal pronoun (*each other, one another*). The reciprocal idea is expressed by the phrases **inter nōs**, **inter vōs**, **inter sē**. See 73, 2.

obsidēs inter sē dedērunt, *they gave one another hostages* (literally, *they gave hostages among themselves*).

[H. 502, 1; (448, N.); LM. 1047; A. 196, f; G. 221; B. 245.]

69. Summary of personal, reflexive, and possessive pronouns:

	PERSONAL	REFLEXIVE	POSSESSIVE
FIRST PERSON	ego	meī ¹	meus, -a, -um, my, mine. noster, nostra, nostrum, <i>our, ours.</i>
SECOND PERSON	tū	tui ¹	tuus, -a, -um, your, yours (sing.). vester, vestra, vestrum, <i>your, yours</i> (pl.).
THIRD PERSON	is, ea, id	sui ¹	suus, -a, -um, his, his <i>own, hers, her own,</i> etc. (reflexive). When not reflexive, use genitive of is, ea, id .

¹ Why is there no nominative form for reflexives ?

70. Translate :

1. You have convinced yourselves.
2. He praised his own friends, but blamed his.
3. I am the one¹ that is doing this.
4. We love each other.
5. They saw her mother on the street.
6. The former is his friend, the latter my enemy.
7. She said that² they would obey her.
8. Many of us will be freed from fear.
9. He sold her house and that of his brother.
10. The following are my reasons.

LESSON 8

PRONOUNS (CONTINUED). CORRELATIVES

71. **Relative Pronouns.** — The relative pronoun **qui, quae, quod, who, which, that**, agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands :

pecūnia quam habeo, *the money that I have*. (Here **quam** is accusative because it is the direct object of **habeo**.)

gladius quō pugnābat, *the sword with which he fought*. (Here **quō** is ablative because it expresses the instrument.)

1. The relative generally agrees in gender and number with a predicate noun of its own clause, rather than with an antecedent of different gender and number :

Celtae, quae est tertia pars, *the Celts, who are the third part*.

2. Sometimes the relative takes its gender and number from the *real meaning* of its antecedent, rather than its actual form :

¹ See 64. ² *that . . . obey* : use accusative and future infinitive.

nostra quī adsumus salūs, *the safety of us who are present.*
(Here **quī** agrees with **nostrūm** implied in **nostra**.)

3. The antecedent of the relative is sometimes omitted, especially if it is indefinite :

sunt quī, etc., *there are men who.*

4. In English the relative is sometimes omitted, but *never* in Latin. Thus, *the book I have* must be expressed in Latin **liber quem habeō**.

5. The antecedent of the relative is often incorporated in the relative clause :

urbem quam statuō vestra est, *the city which I am building is yours* (literally, *what city I am building is yours*).

6. A relative is used at the beginning of a sentence or clause, where in English a demonstrative or personal pronoun would be used :

quae cum ita sint, *since these things are so.*

quō factum est, *from this it resulted.*

7. A relative clause in Latin is often used when the corresponding construction is not employed in English :

the bystanders, **quī adsunt** (literally, *those who are present*).

the standard bearer, **quī aquilam ferēbat** (literally, *he who carried the eagle*).

the existing laws, **lēgēs quae nunc sunt** (literally, *the laws which now exist [are]*).

the plaintiff, **ille quī petit** (literally, *he who sues*).

[H. 396, 510 ; (445) ; LM. 820-827 ; A. 198, 199, 201 ; G. 610-616 ; B. 250, 251.]

72. Indefinite pronouns are used to indicate that *some* person or thing is referred to, without indicating *just what*

one. They vary in degree of indefiniteness. **Quis** is the least definite, and **quidam** the most definite. The meanings of the following indefinite pronouns should be thoroughly learned :

quis (generally used only after **sī, nisi, nē, num**), *some one, any one.*

aliquis, *some one, any one.*

quisquam, *any one* (used chiefly in negative and conditional sentences).

quīvis } *any one you please.*
quīlibet }

quisque, *each.*

quidam, *a certain, a.*

1. **Quis**, *some, any*, is never the first word in its clause :

sī quid his . . . accidat, *if anything should happen to these.*

2. **Quisque**, *each*, should be distinguished from **omnis**, *every*. It is not often used in the plural. **quisque** regularly follows the word to which it belongs.

3. **Quisque** is often used with the superlative :

optimus quisque, *all the best* (literally, *each best one*).

[H. 512 ; (455-458) ; LM. 1064-1072 ; A. 202 ; G. 313-318 ; B. 252.]

73. **Alius**, *other* (of more than two), and **alter**, *other* (of two only), are used idiomatically as follows :

1. In pairs, **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another* ; **alter, alter**, *the one . . . the other* ; **alter exercitum perdidit, alter vēdidit**, *one ruined the army, the other sold it.*

2. When repeated in different cases or when used with the corresponding adverb, they express in a condensed form various idiomatic phrases :

alius alium incūsat, *one accuses one, another another* (literally, *another accuses another, i.e. each one accuses some one else*).

alii aliam in partem, (*they fled*) *some in one direction, others in another*.

[H. 516; (459); LM. 1047; A. 203; G. 319; B. 253.]

74. **Ipse**, *self*, emphasizes the substantive with which it is used. Do not confuse it with the reflexive (65, 66). "Self" in English may be either intensive or reflexive, while the Latin has a special word for each :

sē videt, *he sees himself* (reflexive).

ipse puerum videt, *he himself sees the boy* (intensive).

Note the following uses and meanings of **ipse** :

1. *very, mere, in person, own accord*, etc.

eō ipsō diē, *on that very day*.

ipsā audaciā, *by mere audacity*.

ipse aderat, *he was present in person*.

valvae sē ipsae aperuērunt, *the doors opened of their own accord*.

2. When it emphasizes a reflexive, it is put in the nominative rather than in agreement with the reflexive :

sē ipse continēre nōn potest, *he cannot contain himself* (not **sē ipsum**).

3. It is sometimes used instead of an indirect reflexive:

lēgātōs mīsīt qui ipsī vītā peterent, *he sent messengers to beg life for himself* (here **ipsī** is used instead of **sibi**).

[H. 509; (452); LM. 1060-1062; A. 195, f-1; G. 311; B. 249.]

75. The interrogative pronoun is **quis** (**quī**), **quae**, **quid** (**quod**), *who, which, what?* The forms **quī** and **quod** are generally used as interrogative adjectives:

quī locus est, *what place is there?*

Quis and **quid** are generally used as pronouns (i.e. no noun is expressed):

quis clārior Themistocle, *who is more famous than Themistocles?*

[H. 511; (454); LM. 285; A. 104; G. 106; B. 90.]

76. **Īdem**, *the same*, is often equivalent to the English *likewise, at the same time, also, yet*:

quod idem mihi contigit, *which likewise (or also) happened to me* (literally, *which, the same thing*).

quidquid honestum est, idem est ūtile, *whatever is honorable is at the same time advantageous*.

cum . . . dicat, negat idem, *although he says, etc., yet he denies, etc.* (literally, *he, the same man, denies*).

1. For **īdem atque (ac)**, *the same as*, see 82, 3.

[H. 508; (451, 3, 5); LM. 1059; A. 195, e; G. 310; B. 248.]

77. Translate:

1. I witnessed those deeds with my own eyes.
2. What road did he fortify?
3. The boy, whose book I have, is not here to-day.
4. He blamed himself for his laziness.
5. The Rhine, which is a river in Europe, is one hundred feet wide.
6. All the houses I had were burned.
7. Some did one thing, others another.

8. The perpetrators¹ of the crime have left the city.
9. That also belongs to me.²
10. Each one fled to the very gates of the city.

LESSON 9

QUESTIONS. NEGATIVE CONNECTIVES

78. Direct questions in Latin are not distinguished by the order of the words, as in English. They are introduced by the following special words:

1. **-ne.** This is an enclitic, and is added to the emphatic word, generally the first word. Such a question merely asks for information:

mānsitne Rōmae? *did he stay at Rome?*

2. **nōne.** This particle implies that the answer "yes" is expected:

nōne mānsit Rōmae? *didn't he stay at Rome, or he staid at Rome, didn't he?* (answer "yes" expected).

3. **num.** This particle implies the answer "no."

num mānsit Rōmae? *did he stay at Rome? or he didn't stay at Rome, did he?* (answer "no" expected).

[H. 378; (351, N. 1-3); LM. 697-701; A. 210; G. 454-456; B. 162, 2.]

79. Direct questions that are introduced by the various interrogative pronouns and adverbs, such as **quis, quī, ubi, quālis, quot**, etc., are like the corresponding English questions, and involve no difficulties. See 75.

¹ What does this noun really mean?

² *belongs to me* = is mine.

80. In double or alternative questions, **utrum**, **-ne**, *whether*, or occasionally no particle at all, is used in the first member; in the second, **an**, *or*, is used. If the second member is negative, **annōn** (less often **necne**), *or not*, is used.

The following table summarizes the various forms:

FIRST MEMBER	SECOND AND SUBSEQUENT MEMBERS
utrum , <i>whether</i> .	an , <i>or</i> .
-ne .	an .
—	annōn .

EXAMPLES:

utrum bonum an malum est ? bonumne an malum est ? bonum an malum est ?	}	<i>is it good or bad ?</i>
---	---	----------------------------

mānsitne Rōmae annōn ? *did he stay at Rome or not ?*

[H. 380; (353); LM. 705; A. 211; G. 458; B. 162, 4.]

81. Answers. — Latin has no words meaning exclusively “yes” or “no.” Answers are expressed as follows:

1. By repeating the verb:

mānsitne Rōmae ? *did he stay at Rome ?* **mānsit**, *yes* (or **nōn mānsit**, *no*).

2. By the following adverbs and phrases:

For “yes,”

ita, *so, true, etc.*

ita est, *it is so, etc.*

etiam, *even so, yes, etc.*

sānē, *surely, no doubt, etc.*

vērō, *in truth, true, no doubt, etc.*

certē, *certainly, unquestionably, etc.*; and others.

For "no,"

nōn, not (so).

minimē, not at all.

nūllō modō, by no means.

nōn quidem, certainly not ; why, no ; etc. ; and others.

[H. 379 ; (352) ; LM. 703, 704 ; A. 212 ; G. 471 ; B. 162, 5.]

82. Connectives. — Note the following facts about the connection of coördinate words and clauses :

1. *et* is the most common particle of connection, and unites likes and unlikes.

2. *-que* (enclitic) unites more closely than *et*. It combines things that belong closely to each other, and is appended to the first word of its clause (unless that word is a preposition of one syllable).

periculīs insidiisque, dangers and plots.

3. *atque* (*ac*) generally emphasizes the second of the two things mentioned, as the English "and also," "and in fact," "and indeed." After words of *likeness* and *difference*, *atque* (*ac*) may have the force of *as, than*. *Ac* never stands before vowels or *h*.

intrā moenia atque in sinū urbis sunt hostēs, within the walls, and, in fact, in the heart of the city are the enemies.

ego idem sentiō ac tū, I think the same as you.

4. *etiam, even, still*, emphasizes the word to which it belongs, and which it generally precedes.

5. *quoque, also*, immediately follows the word to which it belongs.

6. When three or more words are to be connected, either (1) connect all by *et*, or (2) omit all conjunctions, or (3) connect the last two by *-que*.

<i>uxōrēs, et liberī, et bona,</i>	} <i>wives, children, and property.</i>
<i>uxōrēs, liberī, bona,</i>	
<i>uxōrēs, liberī, bonaque,</i>	

7. Instead of *et* and the negative, *neque* (*nec*) and the positive is generally used in Latin. Such combinations give us the following phrases :

<i>and not,</i>	<i>neque (nec),</i>	<i>literally, nor,</i>
<i>and no,</i>	<i>neque ūllus,</i>	<i>nor any,</i>
<i>and never,</i>	<i>neque umquam,</i>	<i>nor ever,</i>
<i>and no one,</i>	<i>neque quisquam,</i>	<i>nor any one,</i>
<i>and nothing,</i>	<i>neque quidquam,</i>	<i>nor anything.</i>

8. Two adjectives belonging to one noun are connected by *et*, and generally follow the noun :

vir clārus et fortis, a famous brave man.

[H. 314, 315; (310); LM. 755-761; A. 156; G. 475-480; B. 341.]

83. Translate :

1. He will go to Rome, will he not?
2. They had many fields, buildings, and cattle.
3. Whose book is that on the table?
4. He was a general, and no one obeyed him.
5. Do you remember? No.
6. Will he not use his sword?
7. Did he fight or stay in camp?
8. Will you free us from danger? No, indeed.
9. A Roman is a brave, faithful soldier.
10. The Gauls plundered the houses, and, indeed, the very temples of Rome.

LESSON 10

THE PARTICIPLE—ITS USES AND TENSES

84. The participle is a verbal adjective. As a verb, it may govern a case; as an adjective, it agrees with a substantive. The tenses of the participle denote time, *not absolutely*, as in the indicative mood, *but with reference to the time of the verb* of the clause in which it stands. The participle has the following tenses:

Present: representing an action as *in progress* at the time indicated by the tense of the verb:

videō eum id agentem, *I see him as he DOES it* (literally, *him doing it*).

vidēbam eum id agentem, *I saw him as he WAS DOING it*.

vidēbō eum id agentem, *I shall see him as he WILL BE DOING it*.

Note that the participle in these examples expresses no absolute time. It describes an action that *is going on* at the time of the main verb.

Perfect: representing an action as *completed* at the time indicated by the tense of the verb:

cohortātus suōs abiit, *he ENCOURAGED his troops, and went away* (literally, *having encouraged his troops, he went away*).

cohortātus suōs abit, *he ENCOURAGES his troops, and goes away*.

cohortātus suōs abibit, *he WILL ENCOURAGE his troops, and then go away*.

Note again in these examples the various meanings of the perfect participle, yet they all express *action that is completed* before the action of the main verb begins.

Future: expressing *subsequent* action:

vidēbam eum id āctūrum, *I saw him when he was intending to do it.*

[H. 636, 640; (548, 550); LM. 1009-1011; A. 289, 290; G. 282, 283; B. 336.]

85. The following outline shows how the tenses of the participle may be formed from the stems obtained from the principal parts:

Present stem. Perf. act. stem. Perf. pass. stem.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.—ago, age|re ēg|ī āct|us

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	pres. stem + ns	wanting
FUTURE	perf. pass. stem + ūrus	<i>Gerundive.</i> Pres. stem + ndus
PERFECT	wanting	the last one of the principal parts

1. Deponent verbs have the participles of both voices.

2. The missing perfect active participle is supplied by the perfect passive participle of the deponent verbs; if there is no deponent verb with the necessary meaning, clauses with **cum**, **postquam**, etc., may be used:

having done this, he went away, cum id fēcisset, abiit.

3. The missing present passive participle is supplied by clauses with **dum**, **cum**, or **quod**.

4. The perfect participles of some deponents are used practically like our present participle :

ūsus, *using*.

secūtus, *following*.

arbitrātus, **ratus**, *thinking*.

solitus, *accustomed*.

ausus, *daring*.

And some others.

[H. 222, 1, 640, 1, 4, 5; (231, 550, N. 4 and 5); LM. 393-401; A. 135, a. 290 b. c. d.; G. 128, 585 R.; B. 112, a. 336, 5, 356, 2.]

86. Form all the participles (giving the English meanings) of the following verbs :

dō, **dare**, **dedī**, **datus**, *give*.

videō, **vidēre**, **vidī**, **visus**, *see*.

faciō, **facere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, *make, do*.

sequor, **sequī**, **secūtus sum**, *follow*.

mūniō, **mūnīre**, **mūnīvī**, **mūnitus**, *fortify*.

87. Participles are used in Latin more extensively than in English. They may express *time, condition, cause, manner, means, concession, circumstance*.

Study carefully the following examples which show the various relations that the participle expresses :

1. *Time*.

militēs cohortātus . . . proeli committendī signum dedit,
after he had encouraged his soldiers, he gave the signal to begin battle.

2. *Condition*.

damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, *if condemned, the punishment must follow.*

3. *Cause.*

hōrum auctōritāte finitimī adductī retinent, *since their neighbors were influenced by their authority, they retained.*

4. *Manner.*

Rōmānī grātulantēs Horātium accipiunt, *the Romans receive Horatius with congratulations (congratulating).*

5. *Means.*

sōl oriēns diem cōnficit, *the sun, by its rising, makes the day.*

6. *Concession.*

repulsus in oppidum, tamen . . . impetrāvit, *although he had been driven back into the town, yet he gained, etc.*

It will be seen from these examples that clauses beginning with "if," "when," "after," "although," "since," "while," etc., and relative clauses may often be rendered in Latin by the participle.

[H. 637-639; (549); LM. 1017; A. 292; G. 664-668; B. 337, 2.]

88. When a verb in English is coordinate (connected by "and") with another verb, it may often be rendered in Latin by a participle in agreement with the subject or object of that verb:

cōpias ēductas ex castrīs instrūxērunt, *they led their troops out of camp and drew them up (literally, they drew up their troops HAVING BEEN LED out of camp).*

89. **Ablative Absolute.**—A noun or pronoun in the ablative, with a participle agreeing with it, may be used to express any of the relations mentioned in 87. The word "absolute" means that this construction can be used only

when the noun has no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence :

armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus . . . profectus est, after arms and hostages had been received, Crassus set out, etc.

The student will notice that it is possible to use the ablative absolute in the above example because **armis . . . acceptis** has nothing to do grammatically with the main clause, *Crassus set out*.

1. The ablative absolute is often used to supply the lack of a perfect active participle [85, 2]. If we wished to express *Caesar having done this*, we must say **quō factō Caesar (this having been done, Caesar)**.

2. The participle is sometimes omitted, and two substantives, or a substantive and an adjective, are used in the ablative absolute construction :

duce Brutō, under the leadership of Brutus.

[H. 489; (431); LM. 638-642; A. 255; G. 409, 410; B. 227.]

90. Translate :

1. When they had performed these deeds, they set out for Rome.

2. Though he was wounded, he fought for many hours.

3. I heard her while she was speaking.

4. He took¹ the town and killed the inhabitants.

5. He received the gifts that had been sent.

6. When Cicero had been elected² consul, he drove Catiline from Rome.

7. When Cicero had been elected² consul, Catiline formed a conspiracy.

8. We become better citizens by doing³ our duty.

9. If he is killed, we shall all mourn.

¹ Use **potior**.

² Use **faciō**.

³ Use **fungor**.

LESSON II

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE. THE PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS. SUPINE

91. The gerund is a verbal noun. It has only the oblique cases of the singular, i.e. *genitive*, *dative*, *accusative*, and *ablative*. As a *noun* the gerund may itself be governed by other words; as a *verb* it may take an object.

Examples of its use in different cases:

Genitive.

ars vivendī, *art of living.*

agendī causā, *for the sake of doing.*

cupidus videndī, *desirous of seeing.*

Dative.

aqua ūtilis est bibendō, *water is useful for drinking.*

The dative is not often used.

Accusative.

This case is used only with *ad* (sometimes *in*) to denote purpose.

nŭlla rēs tantum ad dicendum prōficit, etc., *nothing is as profitable for speaking*, etc.

Ablative.

dēterrēre ā scribendō, *to deter from writing.*

mēns discendō alitur et cōgitandō, *the mind grows by learning and reflection.*

NOTE. — As a rule, the gerund takes a direct object only when used in the genitive or the ablative (without a preposition).

[H. 624-631; (541-542); L.M. 989, 990; A. 295-301; G. 425-433; B. 338.]

92. The gerundive is a verbal adjective and is passive in its literal meaning. See 85. Therefore, being an adjective, it always agrees with a substantive :

- ✓ *cōnsilia urbis dēlendae, plans for destroying the city* (literally, *plans of the city to be destroyed*).
- ad pācem petendam vēnērunt, they came to seek peace* (literally, *they came for peace to be asked*).

93. Gerundive Construction used instead of the Gerund. — When the genitive or ablative of the gerund would have a direct object, the gerundive is generally used instead. See 91, note.

GERUND CONSTRUCTION

cupidus pācem petendī, desirous of seeking peace.

scribendō epistulās, by writing letters.

GERUNDIVE CONSTRUCTION
(preferable)

cupidus pācis petendae.

scribendīs epistulīs.

1. The gerundive is always used to avoid using a direct object with the dative of the gerund, or with a case dependent upon a preposition. 91, note.

aptum tegendīs corporibus, suited to the defense of the body.

ad pācem petendam vēnērunt, they came to seek peace.

Brūtus in liberandā patriā est interfectus, Brutus was slain in freeing his country.

2. When the genitives *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*, are used in the gerundive construction, the gerundive regularly ends in *dī*, regardless of the gender and number of the pronoun :

nostrī servandī causā, for the sake of saving ourselves.

[H. 625-631; (543, 544); LM. 987-1003; A. 296-301; G. 427-433; B. 339.]

- ✓ 94. **Active Periphrastic Conjugation.** — This is formed by the future active participle and the auxiliary verb **sum**. It expresses the idea conveyed by the English phrases “I am about to,” “I am going to,” “I intend to”:

amātūrus est, he is about to love.

[H. 236; (233); LM. 355; A. 129; G. 247; B. 115.]

- ✓ 95. **Passive Periphrastic Conjugation.** — This is formed by the gerundive and the auxiliary verb **sum**. It expresses *obligation* or *necessity*, and in its literal meaning is passive. The agent is expressed by the dative case.

Note the following points:

1. Since the conjugation is passive, all active English sentences must be recast into the passive voice before they can be literally translated in Latin. Thus: “I must give the signal” (active) = “The signal must be given by me” (passive) = **sīgnum mihi est dandum**.

2. Intransitive verbs of this conjugation are always used impersonally in Latin. Thus: “We ought to come” = “It ought to be come by us” = **nōbīs veniendum**.

[H. 237; (234); LM. 991, 992; A. 129; G. 251; B. 115.]

- ✓ 96. **Supine.**

1. The form ending in **-um** is used chiefly to express purpose after verbs of motion:

ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt, they came to Caesar to congratulate him.

2. The form in **-ū** is used as an ablative of specification with various adjectives:

hōc est optimum factū, *this is best to do* (literally, *this is best in respect to doing*).

mīrābile dictū, *wonderful to say*.

[H. 633, 635; (546, 547); LM. 1004-1008; A. 302, 303; G. 435, 436; B. 340.]

97. Translate:

1. She was fitted to rule.
- > 2. You must remain here.
- > 3. Ambassadors came to seek peace.¹
- > 4. Since Crassus is their leader, they ought to fight bravely.
- > 5. They formed² the plan of renewing the war.
6. We will flee for the sake of saving ourselves.
7. No time was given the Romans to³ arm themselves.
- > 8. That is easy to do.
- > 9. Caesar had to recall the soldiers.
10. By giving and aiding we enjoy life.

LESSON 12

REVIEW AND SIGHT PRACTICE

98. Review the principles of syntax in 58-96.

99. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words:

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|--|---------------------|
| 1. hinc. | | 6. pāreō. |
| 2. illic. | | 7. vēndō.* |
| 3. hūc. | | 8. domus. |
| 4. culpō, I blame. | | 9. soleō. |
| 5. inimicus, hostis. | | 10. quisque. |

¹ Express in two ways.

² **capiō.**

³ **ad** and **acc.**

11. quisquis.	31. aperiō.
12. quisquam.	32. mūniō.
13. quīdam.	33. pigritia, ae, <i>laziness.</i>
14. relinquō.	34. pēs.
15. porta.	35. minimē.
16. portus.	36. quidem, nē-quidem.
17. etiam.	37. quoque.
18. vērō.	38. aedificium.
19. ager.	39. castra.
20. agō.	40. periculum.
21. cohortor.*	41. fidēlis.
22. audeō.*	42. cōnficiō.
23. audiō.	43. instruō.
24. obses.	44. interficiō.*
25. dives.	45. cōsilium.
26. aptus.	46. iuvō.
27. tradō.	47. statuō.
28. salūs.	48. cōstituō.
29. adsum.	49. cōsistō.
30. petō.	

100. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs given above, and write out all the participles of those that are starred.

101. Let the instructor form several original sentences in English from the words in 99, illustrating the grammatical principles of 58-96. These sentences may be given for oral drill or a written exercise.

LESSON 13

TENSES OF INDICATIVE, SUBJUNCTIVE, AND INFINITIVE.
 DELIBERATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE. HOW TO EXPRESS "OUGHT,"
 "MUST"

102. **Present Indicative.** — Aside from its regular meanings, the following uses should be noted :

1. It is used to describe past actions and events which the writer imagines to be now going on before his eyes. It is then called the *Historical Present*, and is generally translated by a past tense :

Caesar Aeduīs obsidēs imperat, *Caesar demanded hostages of the Aeduans.*

✓ 2. When **dum**, *while*, is used with the present tense, the verb is generally translated as if it were imperfect :

dum haec geruntur, *while these things WERE GOING ON.*

✓ 3. In combination with, **iam**, *now* : **iam diū**, *now for a long time*; **iam pridem**, *now long since*, and similar words, the present is used with the force of the English perfect.

iam diū cupiō tē vīsere, *I have for a long time wished to visit you (i.e. I now wish and have long wished).*

103. **Imperfect Indicative.** — This tense represents the action as *taking place in past time.*

1. It sometimes represents an action as *customary* or *repeated* :

epulābātur mōre Persārum, *he USED TO BANQUET in the Persian style.*

2. With **iam**, **iam diū**, **iam dūdum**, etc. [see 102, 2], the imperfect has the force of the English pluperfect :

iam diū cupiēbam tē vīsere, *I had for a long time wished to visit you.*

104. **Future Indicative.** — The Latin uses the future much more exactly than the English. We often use the present tense to refer to future time, the Latin very seldom. Thus:

If he comes, I shall see him, sī veniet (literally, will come), eum vidēbō.

105. **Perfect Indicative.** — Note its two meanings (1) *amāvī, I have loved*, called the present perfect or perfect definite; (2) *amāvī, I loved*, called the historical perfect or perfect indefinite.

106. Note these perfects that have a *present* meaning. Their pluperfect forms have the force of the imperfect:

nōvī, I know.

meminī, I remember.

ōdī, I hate.

cōnsuēvī, I am accustomed.

107. **Future-perfect Indicative.** — Note again (see 104) how exactly the Latin uses its tenses:

When I reach Rome, I will write, Rōmam cum vēnerō (literally, shall have reached), scribam.

REFERENCES FOR USE OF TENSES OF INDICATIVE

[H. 532-540; (466-473); LM. 730-748; A. 276-281; G. 227-244; B. 259-264.]

108. The tenses of the infinitive denote present, past, or future time not absolutely, but *with reference to the time of the verb on which they depend.* The significance of the

tenses is the same as that of the tenses of the participle. Review 84, with the examples given, very carefully.

[H. 617; (537); LM. 978; A. 288; G. 529, 530; B. 270.]

109. The following outline shows how the tenses of the infinitive may be formed. Review 85.

INFINITIVES

TENSE	ACTIVE VOICE	PASSIVE VOICE
PRESENT	second one of the principal parts	change final e of present active infinitive to ī, except in third conjugation, which changes ere to ī
FUTURE	future active participle and esse	supine and īri
PERFECT	perfect active stem + isse	perfect passive participle and esse

1. Deponent verbs substitute the future active for the future passive infinitive.

Form all the infinitives of the following verbs:

vincō, vincere, vici, victus, *conquer.*

sentiō, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsus, *perceive.*

proficiscor, proficisci, profectus, *set out.*

110. **Deliberative Subjunctive.** — The subjunctive is used in questions that are asked, not to receive information, but to indicate (1) *doubt, indignation*, or (2) an *impossibility*

of the thing's being done. The negative is *nōn*. They are most common in the first person.

quid agam, iūdicēs? *what am I to do, judges?*

quid dicerem? *what was I to say? or what could I say?*

[H. 559, 4; (484, V); LM. 723; A. 268; G. 265; B. 277.]

III. English expressions that employ the auxiliary verbs *ought* or *must*, such as *you ought to go*, *he must do this*, are expressed in Latin in several ways:

1. The passive periphrastic conjugation. Review 95.

2. *dēbeō* and the infinitive.

3. *oportet* (an impersonal verb) with the infinitive, or the subjunctive (without *ut*):

tē oportet virtūs trahat, *virtue ought to attract you* (literally, *it ought (to be) that virtue attract you*).

lēgem brevem esse oportet, *a law ought to be brief*.

EXAMPLES:—

id mihi faciendum est,	}	<i>I ought to do this,</i>
dēbeō id facere,		OR
mē oportet id facere,		<i>I must do this.</i>
oportet id faciam,		

[H. 564, II, 1; (502, 1); LM. 694, 782; A. 331, 1; G. 535, R. 2; B. 295, 6, 8.]

330.

112. Compare these two English sentences:

“I ought to do this.”

“I ought to have done this.”

In changing to past time, the infinitive changes, and not the main verb “ought.” This is because the verbs “ought” and “must” are defective in English. In the

following Latin examples, note that the *main verb* changes to a past tense, and not the infinitive :

dēbeō id facere,	}	<i>I ought to do this.</i>
oportet mē id facere,		
dēbuī id facere,	}	<i>I ought to have done this.</i>
oportuit mē id facere,		

[H. 618, 2; (537, 1); LM. 980; A. 288, a; G. 254, R. 1; B. 270, 2.]

113. Translate :

- > 1. We have been living in the city for many years.
2. Shall I tell him this?
3. She ought to work more diligently.
- > 4. While the city was being fortified, the enemy arrived.
- > 5. He had been in command of¹ the army a long time.
- > 6. You ought not to have written that letter.
7. He hates them on account of their laziness.
8. Caesar had to fortify his camp.
9. What was I to do?
10. He never used to obey his parents.

LESSON 14

COMMANDS, EXHORTATIONS, PROHIBITIONS; HOW TO EXPRESS "MAY," "CAN," "MIGHT," ETC.

114. The present imperative is used to express a direct positive command in the second person. The future tense is used chiefly in legal phrases :

da mihi hōc, give me this.

[H. 560; (487); LM. 725; A. 269; G. 266; B. 281.]

¹ *Be in command of* = *praesum*.

115. The first and third persons, which are missing in the imperative, are supplied by the subjunctive (negative *nē*). The tense is usually present. The subjunctive then expresses an *exhortation* or an *entreaty*:

amēmus patriam, let us love our country.

sēcernant sē ā bonīs, let them separate themselves from the good.

[H. 559, 1, 560; (484. II); LM. 713; A. 266; G. 263, 1, 3; B. 274, 275.]

116. A direct command in the second person, when negative, is called a *prohibition*. They are expressed in Latin as follows:

1. *Nōlī* (plural *nōlīte*), *be unwilling*, with the infinitive. This is the common expression: *nōlī hōc facere, do not do this* (literally, *be unwilling to do this*).

2. *Nē* with the second person of the perfect subjunctive, or *cavē, cavē nē, fac nē, take care not, see that not*, with the second person of the present or perfect subjunctive. These expressions, however, are less common.

CAUTION.— Do not express prohibition by *nē* or *nōn* and the imperative.

[H. 561, 1, 2; (488-489); LM. 728, 729; A. 269, a, b; G. 271, 2, 272, 2; B. 276.]

SUMMARY

PERSON	POSITIVE	NEGATIVE
FIRST	<i>hōc faciāmus, let us do this</i>	<i>nē hōc faciāmus, let us not do this</i>
SECOND	<i>hōc fac, do this</i>	<i>nōlī (nōlīte) hōc facere, do not do this</i>
THIRD	<i>hōc faciat, let him do this</i>	<i>nē hōc faciat, let him not do this</i>

117. The English auxiliaries, *may, might, could, would, should*, are not always used with the same force. When used with their full force of *possibility*, or *power*, they are expressed by corresponding Latin verbs. Thus, *licet, it is permitted*, gives the idea of *may, might*; *possum, I am able*, the idea of *could*; *volō, I am willing*, the idea of *would*. When these English auxiliaries are less forceful, that is, are not used with their full literal meaning, they are represented in Latin by the subjunctive mood.

118. **Potential Subjunctive.** — This expresses an action as *possible* or *conditional*, not as real. It often represents an action as dependent upon some implied condition. The negative is *nōn*. This subjunctive is generally represented in English by *may, should, would*:

quispiam quaerat, some one may ask.

velim, I should wish, or I should like (more polite than *volō, I wish*).

dicerēs, you would say, or would have said.

[H. 552-556; (485, 486); LM. 717-720; A. 311, a, b; G. 257, 258; B. 280.]

119. When *may* or *might* emphasize the idea of permission, use *licet*. It is used as follows:

1. Followed by subjunctive.
2. Followed by infinitive.

EXAMPLES:

licet eum (eī) venire, } *he may* (i.e. *is permitted to*) *come.*
licet veniat,

[H. 564, II, 1, 615; (501, 1, 536, 2, (3)); LM. 693, 782; A. 331, i, N. 3; G. 535, 553, 4; B. 295, 6, 327, 1.]

120. Translate :

1. Let them free us from danger.
2. He ought to have remained here.
3. Don't leave the city.
4. Let us all enjoy life.
5. What can that fellow do?
6. Let us not be afraid of work.
7. I should like to do that.
8. You may¹ do it if you wish.
9. Some one may¹ ask you for that book.
10. Any one would have fought for² his country.

LESSON 15

CONDITIONS AND WISHES

121. Conditional sentences are complex sentences consisting of two parts, the condition (or protasis) introduced by "if," "if not," "unless," and the conclusion (or apodosis).

For convenience, they may be arranged in these classes:

I. Conditions referring to *present* or *past* time.

1. Simple.
2. Contrary to Fact (Non-fact).

II. Conditions referring to *future* time.

1. Vivid Future.
2. Less Vivid Future.

122. **Simple.** — In this class the condition (or protasis) simply states a present or past supposition of fact, without

¹ Does "may" mean "is permitted"?

² Do not use the dative.

implying whether or not it is true. The present and past tenses of the indicative are used in both condition and conclusion :

sī hōc faciunt, bene est, if they do this, it is well.

sī hōc fēcērunt, bene fuit, if they did this, it was well.

[H. 574; (508); LM. 933; A. 306; G. 595; B. 302.]

123. Contrary-to-fact Conditions. — When the condition states a present or past supposition, implying that the condition is not or was not fulfilled (*i.e.* is contrary to the actual facts of the case), the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in both condition and conclusion. The imperfect expresses present time, the pluperfect past time :

sī hōc facerent, bene esset, if they were (now) doing this (implying that they are not), it would be well.

sī hōc fēcissent, bene fuisset, if they had done this, it would have been well.

1. Expressions of *ability, obligation, or necessity* (such as **dēbeō, oportet, decet, possum**, the periphrastic conjugation, etc.), when used in the conclusion, are often in the imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect *indicative*, instead of the *subjunctive* :

sī Rōmae privātus esset, tamen is erat dēligendus, if he were a private citizen at Rome, yet he ought to be appointed.

[H. 579, 1, 583; (510, 511, 2); LM. 938, 940; A. 308, a, c; G. 597, 3, (a); B. 304, 1, 3.]

124. Vivid Future Condition. — When a supposed future case is stated distinctly and vividly (as in English, “if I shall go,” or “if I go”), the future or future-perfect indicative is used in both condition and conclusion :

sī hōc facient, bene erit, if they do (i.e. will do) this, it will be well.

CAUTION. — Remember that the present tense in English often refers to future time. See 104.

[H. 574; (508); LM. 933; A. 307, a; G. 595; B. 302.]

125. Less Vivid Future Condition. — When a supposed future case is stated in a less distinct or vivid form (as in English, “if I should go”), the present (less often the perfect) subjunctive is used in both condition and conclusion:

sī hōc faciant, bene sit, if they should do this, it would be well.

This form of condition may be recognized in English by the auxiliaries *should* or *would*, in both parts of the condition.

[H. 576; (509); LM. 936; A. 307, b; G. 596; B. 303.]

126. Summary of conditions :

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| CLASSES
OF
CONDITIONAL
SENTENCES. | } | I. Present or past time. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Simple. Present or past tenses of indicative in both parts. 2. Contrary to fact. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> (1) Present time — imperfect subjunctive in both parts. (2) Past time — pluperfect subjunctive in both parts. |
| | | II. Future time. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Vivid future. Future or future perfect indicative in both parts. 2. Less vivid future. Present or perfect subjunctive in both parts. |

127. Condition omitted. The condition (or protasis) is sometimes contained in a participle, or implied from the sense of the sentence.

liberātus Rōmam ibit, *if he is set free (literally, having been liberated), he will go to Rome.* See potential subjunctive, 118.

128. Wishes may be divided into two classes :

1. Those that refer to the future as, "may he do this," or "O that he may come."

2. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are sometimes called *contrary-to-fact* wishes. Thus, "O that this had happened" (implying that it did not happen), or "would that he were not here" (implying that he is here now).

129. The subjunctive, usually with **utinam**, is used to express a wish. The negative is **nē**. The force of the tenses is as follows :

1. The present tense, often with **utinam**, refers to future time, and denotes the wish as possible.

2. The imperfect tense, regularly with **utinam**, expresses a wish that is contrary to fact in present time.

3. The pluperfect, regularly with **utinam**, represents a wish as contrary to fact in past time.

EXAMPLES :

1. **utinam hōc faciat**, *may he do this!* (possible).

2. **utinam hōc faceret**, *would that he were doing this!* (contrary to fact in present time, implying that he isn't doing this).

3. *utinam hōc nē fēcisset, would that he had not done this!* (contrary to fact in past time).

[H. 558, 1, 2 ; (483); LM. 710-712; A. 267, b; G. 260, 261; B. 279.]

130. Translate :

1. I wish he would not come!
2. If he should leave the city, we would all be glad.
3. Let us not surrender to the enemy.
4. Would you have remained, if I had come?
5. O that the famous¹ Alexander were now alive!
6. Even if he gives the signal, we will not advance.
7. Would that we had not persuaded him!
8. You would not have done so.²
9. If she is at home, I am glad.

LESSON 16

SEQUENCE OF TENSES. INDIRECT QUESTIONS. CONSTRUCTION AFTER VERBS OF FEARING AND VERBS OF DOUBTING

131. When the subjunctive is used in a dependent clause, the choice of the tense to be used depends upon the time of the principal or leading clause.

All tenses are divided into two classes: *primary* (*principal*) and *secondary* (*historical*).

1. The primary or principal tenses include all forms that express present or future time. They are the present, future, and future-perfect indicative, the present and perfect subjunctive, and the present and future imperative.

¹ See 61.

² Is a condition implied?

2, The secondary or historical tenses are those that express past time. They are the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

(a) The historical present [102, 1] is sometimes considered a primary tense, although more often a secondary.

132. Rule for Sequence of Tenses. — Whenever the subjunctive is used in a subordinate or dependent clause, the tense that should be used is determined by the following rule:

A primary tense in the main clause is followed by a primary tense in the dependent clause; a secondary tense is followed by a secondary tense.

133. In applying this rule for the sequence of tenses, the student should notice (1) whether the verb of the main clause is primary or secondary; (2) whether the dependent verb denotes (a) time that is present or future with reference to the time of the main verb (*i.e.* whether it denotes incomplete action), or (b) time that is past with reference to the main verb (*i.e.* completed action).

1. If the main verb is primary, the dependent subjunctive must be present tense if the action is incomplete, and perfect if it denotes complete action.

2. If the main verb is a secondary tense, the dependent subjunctive must be imperfect if it denotes incomplete action, and pluperfect if it denotes completed action.

Examples of sequence of tenses :

1. **videō quid faciat,**
I see what he is doing.
2. **vidī quid faceret,**
I saw what he was doing.

^

} In both these examples the dependent clause expresses incomplete action, because the *doing* was going on at the same time as the *seeing*.

3. **videō quid fēcerit,**
I see what he did (or has done).
4. **vidī quid fēcisset,**
I saw what he did (or had done).
- } Here the dependent clauses denote completed action, because the *doing* was finished before the *seeing* began.

OUTLINE FOR USE OF SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES

PRINCIPAL OR MAIN VERB	TENSE USED IN SUBJUNCTIVE	
	INCOMPLETE TIME	COMPLETED TIME
Present Future Future perfect Imperative	Present	Perfect
Perfect Pluperfect Imperfect	Imperfect	Pluperfect

REFERENCES FOR SEQUENCE OF TENSES

[H. 543-545; (490-495); LM. 802-809; A. 285, 286; G. 509-511; B. 266, 267.]

134. Indirect Questions.—When a question is not asked directly, but depends upon some introductory verb, the subjunctive is used:

sciō quis ille sit, *I know who he is.* (The direct question was, **quis ille est?** *who is he?*)

Indirect questions may be recognized in English by the fact that some interrogative word follows the main or introductory verb.

[H. 649, II; (529, I); LM. 810; A. 334; G. 467; B. 300.]

135. A clause dependent upon a verb or expression of *fearing* may be expressed by **ut** or **nē** and the subjunctive. **Nē** is affirmative, and means *that*; **ut** is negative, and means *that not*:

timeō nē hōc faciat, *I fear that he will do this* (or *I fear that he is doing this*).

timēbam ut hōc faceret, *I feared that he would not do this*.

1. **nē nōn**, *that . . . not*, is occasionally used instead of **ut**, and regularly so when the verb of fearing is negative:

nōn vereor nē hōc nōn fēcerit, *I am not afraid that he has not done this*.

[H. 567, 1; (498, III); LM. 897; A. 331, f; G. 550, 2; B. 296, 2.]

136. Verbs of *doubting*, when negative or in the form of a question that implies a negative answer, are followed by **quīn**, *that, but that*, and the subjunctive:

nōn erat dubium quīn plūrimum possent, *there was no doubt that they had very great power*.

quis dubitat quīn in virtūte dīvitiae sint? *who doubts (implying that no one does) that there are riches in virtue?*

1. **Dubitō** also means *hesitate*, and is regularly followed by the infinitive:

nōn dubitem dicere, etc., *I should not hesitate to say*, etc.

[H. 595, 1; (504, 505, 1, 4); LM. 913, 914; A. 332, g, R. N. 2; G. 555, 2, R. 3; B. 298, b.]

137. Translate:

1. Do not tell me where you went.
2. May he not hesitate to fight bravely!
3. I have not asked who she is.

4. I was afraid that they had not returned home.
5. Would any one doubt that he was a good soldier?
6. Let us not fear that the enemy will come.
7. What has that fellow¹ told you?
8. Caesar ought not to have killed all the inhabitants.

LESSON 17

REVIEW AND SIGHT PRACTICE

138. Review the principles of syntax in 102–136.

139. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words:

1. vincō.	18. incola.
2. vinciō.	19. cōnsuēscō.
3. vivō.* <i>live</i>	20. trahō.
4. cōgnōscō. <i>to acquaint</i>	21. brevis.
5. oportet.	22. lēx.
6. dēbeō.* <i>must</i>	23. labōrō.
7. finitimus.	24. mūnus.
8. parēns. <i>parent-rel.</i>	25. ōdī.
9. epistula, littera. <i>letter</i>	26. gerō.*
10. sēcernō.	27. fidēs.
11. quaerō. <i>seek</i>	28. gaudeō.*
12. iter.	29. cupiō.
13. licet.	30. grātia.
14. vereor.	31. sciō.
15. timeō.	32. dubitō.
16. terreō.	33. nēmō.
17. querō.*	34. scelus.

Write all the infinitives of the starred verbs.

¹ See 60.

140. Let the instructor form several original sentences in English from the words in 139, illustrating the grammatical principles of 102-136. These sentences may be given for oral drill or a written exercise.

LESSON 18

SUBJUNCTIVE OF PURPOSE AND RESULT. OBJECT CLAUSES

141. A purpose clause is one which expresses the end or purpose of the action of a verb.

In English, purpose is indicated in a variety of ways. In the sentence, "He came to see me," the purpose clause "to see me" may be expressed "in order that he might see me," or "for the purpose of seeing me," or "in order to see me," etc.

142. In Latin, also, there are many ways of expressing purpose. In previous lessons these have been considered.

1. The genitive of the gerundive construction followed by *causā*. See 91, second example, and 93.

2. The genitive of the gerund followed by *causā*. See 91, second example.

3. *ad* and the accusative of the gerundive construction. See 93, 1, second example.

4. *ad* and the accusative of the gerund. See 91, accusative. This construction is not used with transitive verbs. See 93, 1.

5. Supine in *-um* after verbs of motion. See 96, 1.

143. A clause of purpose is most commonly expressed by *ut*, *that*, *in order that*, and *nē*, *in order that not*, *lest*, and the subjunctive :

vēnī ut meum amicum vidērem, *I came that I might see my friend* (or *to see my friend*).

portās clausit, nē quam oppidānī iniūriam acciperent, *he closed the gates, lest the townsmen should receive any injury*.

1. A relative pronoun is used with the subjunctive to express purpose. There must, of course, be an antecedent of the relative, expressed or understood, in the main clause :

quī cōgnōscerent mīsit, *he sent men to find out*, etc. (literally *he sent those who should find out*).

2. **quō** (the ablative of the relative) is often used with the subjunctive to express purpose when the purpose clause contains a comparative :

carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada excipere possent, *the bottoms of the ships (were) considerably flatter than those of our vessels, so that they might be able to stand the shoals more easily*.

[H. 568 ; (497) ; LM. 835, 899, 908 ; A. 317 ; G. 544, R. 2 ; B. 282.]

CAUTION.— Do not express purpose in Latin by the infinitive. This is used in English, but not in classical Latin.

QUERY.— In how many ways may purpose be expressed in Latin ?

144. The student should notice carefully the difference between a *purpose* and a *result* clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of a verb. Observe the difference as shown in these two examples :

“They shouted so that he might hear.” (Purpose.)

“They shouted so that he heard.” (Result.)

Some word or phrase like *so, such, in such a way*, etc., is often used in the sentence before the result clause to lead up to it, and to show that such a clause is to follow.

145. A result clause is expressed in Latin by *ut, that, so that*, and *ut nōn, so that not*, and the subjunctive :

tanta subitō malacia exstitit ut sē movēre nōn possent, such a calm suddenly arose that they could not move.

1. A relative and the subjunctive also often express result :

nēmō est tam senex quī sē annum nōn putet posse vivere, nobody is so old as not to think that he can live a year.

Note that a negative purpose clause is introduced by *nē*, a negative result clause by *ut nōn*.

[H. 570; (500); LM. 905; A. 319; G. 552; B. 284.]

146. After many Latin verbs the object clause is expressed by *ut* or *nē* and the subjunctive, whereas in English the corresponding construction employs the infinitive :

(Latin.) *huic persuādet utī ad hostīs trānseat* (the object of *persuādet* is the clause *utī . . . trānseat*).

(English.) *he persuaded him to go over to the enemy* (the object of *persuaded* is the infinitive clause, *to go over to the enemy*).

Because of this difference in idiom it is necessary to know what Latin verbs are followed by an object clause in the subjunctive.

147. The subjunctive introduced by *ut* or *nē* is used as the object of verbs signifying to *ask, command, advise, resolve, urge, persuade, permit, strive, decree*.

monet ut omnīs suspiciōnēs vitet, *he advises (or warns) him to avoid all suspicion.*

Helvētiis persuāsit ut exirent, *he persuaded the Helvetians to march forth.*

suīs imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostīs rēicerent, *he ordered his men not to throw back at the enemy any weapon at all.*

tē rogō ut eum iuvēs, *I beg you to aid him.*

The following verbs are some of the most common that take this construction :

persuādeō, *persuade.*

imperō, mandō, *order.*

rogō, *ask.*

ōrō, *beg.*

postulō, *demand.*

moneō, *advise.*

petō, quaerō, *request, entreat.*

cohortor, hortor, *encourage, urge.*

concēdō, permittō, *allow.*

cēnseō, *propose, move.*

dēcernō, *resolve, decree.*

operam dō, *take pains.*

negōtium dō, *employ, charge.*

labōrō, contendō, *strive.*

[H. 565 ; (498, I, II) ; LM. 893-895 ; A. 331 ; G. 546, and N. 1 ; B. 295, 1, 2, 4, 5.]

148. There are many exceptions to the principle stated in 147, of which note the following :

1. Iubeō, *order*, and vetō, *forbid*, are regularly followed by the infinitive :

Helvētiōs oppida restituere iussit, *he ordered the Helvetians to rebuild their towns.*

2. Cōnor, *try, strive*, regularly takes the infinitive :

sī trānsire cōnārentur, *if they should try to cross.*

3. The following verbs are followed either by (1) the infinitive, or (2) *ut* and *nē* and the subjunctive. Yet the infinitive is more common.

patior, sinō, allow.
cōstituō, determine.
statuō, resolve upon.
volō, wish, be willing.

nōlō, be unwilling.
mālō, prefer.
cupiō, desire.
studeō, be eager for.

149. Translate:

1. They sent a man to see her. (Express in six different ways in Latin.)
2. They were persuaded¹ to do this.
3. Caesar asked Labienus to occupy² the mountain and wait for his men.
4. I ordered him to be bound² and led to me.
5. We should like to go to Athens.
6. He was so lazy that he would not fight.
7. I am not the man to desert a friend.

LESSON 19

CONSTRUCTION AFTER VERBS OF HINDERING AND REFUSING. TEMPORAL CLAUSES

150. Object clauses dependent upon verbs of *hindering*, *preventing*, and *refusing* are expressed as follows:

(1) By *nē* or *quōminus* and the subjunctive, if the main clause is *affirmative*.

Caesar dētērrēre potest nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, *Caesar can prevent a greater multitude of Germans from being led across the Rhine.*

¹ *were persuaded*: see 32, 2.

² Use a participle to express this verb.

1. **Prohibeō** regularly takes the infinitive.

Germānōs trānsire prohibēbant, *they kept the Germans from crossing.*

(2) By **quīn** (less often **quōminus**) and the subjunctive, if the main clause is negative.

neque recūsant quīn armīs contendant, *and they do not refuse to contend in arms.*

retinērī nōn potuerant quīn tēla cōnicerent, *they could not be restrained from hurling their weapons.*

[H. 566, 568, 8, 595, 2; (504, 4, 505, II); LM. 898; A. 331, e, 2, 332, g; G. 548, 549, 554, 555; B. 295, 3, a.]

151. The time of the action of a verb may be defined by (1) a noun, or (2) a clause. As, "At six o'clock he went home." "When it was dark he went home."

Review 51.

152. Temporal clauses introduced by the following particles take the indicative. The tense is generally perfect or historical present.

postquam (**posteāquam**), *after*.

ubi, *when*.

ut, *as, when*.

ut **prīmum**,

cum **prīmum**,

simul **atque**,

simul **āc**,

simul,

} *as soon as.*

postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit, *after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.*

Pompēius ut equitātum suum pulsum vīdit, aciē excessit, *when Pompey saw his cavalry beaten, he left the army.*

[H. 602; (518); LM. 881; A. 324; G. 561; B. 287, 1.]

153. Temporal clauses introduced by **cum**, *when, while, after*, take :

1. The indicative, if the tense is present, perfect, future, or future-perfect.

2. The subjunctive, if the tense is imperfect or pluperfect. The imperfect or pluperfect indicative is very rare in classical Latin.

cum id nūntiātum esset, mātūrat, when this had been reported, he hastened.

cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, when Caesar came into Gaul.

Review 87, I, 89.

[H. 600, 601; (521); LM. 854-858; A. 325; G. 580, 585; B. 288, 1.]

154. **antequam** and **priusquam**, *before, until*, are used as follows :

(1) With the indicative to express an *actual fact*. The tense is generally perfect, future-perfect, or present.

(2) With the subjunctive when the action is viewed as *anticipated*. The imperfect and pluperfect are generally used.

nec prius respēxī quam vēnimus, and I did not look back until we arrived.

priusquam tēlum adicī posset, omnis aciēs terga vertit, before a spear could be hurled, the whole army fled.

1. **Antequam** and **priusquam** are often divided into their two elements, **ante . . . quam, prius . . . quam**, and the first part put in the main clause, the second in the temporal clause. See first example given above.

2. **Antequam** and **priusquam** mean *until* after a negative clause. See first example.

[H. 605, I, II; (520); LM. 877-880; A. 327; G. 574-577; B. 291, 292.]

155. *Dum, quoad, or quam diū, as long as, so long as,* take the indicative. For *dum, while,* see 102, 2.

quoad potuit, restitit, he resisted as long as he could.

[H. 603, I; (519, I); LM. 918; A. 328, 2; G. 569; B. 293, I, II.]

156. *Dum and quoad, until,* are used as follows:

1. With the indicative to denote *an actual event.* This will be, in general, when the reference is to a past action. In this sense *dum* is used less often than *quoad.*

nostrī nōn finem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad equitēs praecipitis hostis ēgērunt, our men did not give up the pursuit until the cavalry drove the enemy headlong.

2. With the subjunctive to denote *anticipation or expectancy.* This will be, in general, when the "until" clause refers to future time with reference to the main verb:

expectās dum dicat, you are waiting until he speaks.

dum nāvēs convenirent, in ancorīs expectāvit, he waited at anchor for the ship to assemble (literally, until the ships should assemble).

[H. 603, II, 1, 2; (519, II); LM. 921, 922; A. 328; G. 571, 572; B. 293, III, 1, 2.]

157. Translate:

1. I enjoyed my books as long as I remained there.
2. Just¹ as soon as they saw the enemy, they fled.
3. When he had been informed of this, they started for Rome.
4. You ought to have gone before they came.
5. While he was delaying near² the city, he met many of his friends.

¹ This word merely emphasizes "as soon as." ² *ad* and *acc.*

6. Caesar waited for the soldiers to gather.
7. We will prevent them from going away.
8. He did not leave the city until he had seen her.
9. They did not refuse to believe me.

LESSON 20

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. SIMPLE SENTENCES

158. The words or thoughts of any person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (i.e. direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (i.e. indirect discourse) is one in which the original words or thoughts are stated in the words of another, and conform to the construction of the sentence in which they stand.

The English sentence, *I am present*, when quoted directly, is stated: *he said, "I am present."* When quoted indirectly, it assumes this form: *he said that he was present*, or, after a present tense of the verb of saying, *he says that he is present*. An indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word "that," although this may be omitted, as, *he says (that) he is coming*.

CAUTION.—The English word "that" should be carefully examined. It may (1) introduce an object clause, a purpose or result clause, being rendered in Latin by *ut*, *nē*, *quīn*, *quōminus*; (2) be the relative pronoun, as "the book that I saw," and be expressed by the proper form of *quī*; (3) be the demonstrative pronoun, as "that book is mine," and be expressed by *ille*; (4) be used to introduce a clause in indirect discourse, as "I know that he is here." In this case there is no corresponding word in Latin.

159. Examine carefully these examples :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

*I am coming, veniō.**I came, vēnī.*

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

*he says that he is coming,
dicit sē venīre.**he said that he had come,
dixit sē vēnisse.*

Note (1) that the English expresses the indirect statement by a clause introduced by "that"; (2) that the Latin changes the verb of the direct statement to the infinitive, with its subject in the accusative; (3) that there is no word in Latin to correspond to the "that" in English. Hence never write *dīcō ut*, etc., *I say that*, etc.

160. Rule for Main Verbs in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, the main verb of a declaratory sentence becomes infinitive with its subject in the accusative.

Verbs and expressions of *knowing, thinking, telling, and perceiving* are used to introduce a sentence when it is quoted indirectly.

Some of the more common verbs are :

*dīcō, say, tell.**nūntiō, announce.**referō, report.**certiōrem faciō, inform.**polliceor, promise.**negō, say that . . . not.**nārrō, relate.**respondeō, reply.**scribō, write.**meminī, remember.**sciō, know.**cōgnōscō, learn, find out.**sentiō, perceive.**audiō, hear.**videō, see.**comperiō, find out.**putō, think.**iūdicō, judge.**spērō, hope.**cōnfidō, trust.*

[H. 642; (523, I); LM. 1020-1023; A. 336, 1, 2; G. 527; B. 314, 1, 331, 1.]

161. Review carefully 108 and 109. The tenses of the infinitive do not follow the tense of the introductory verb. They only denote time *relative* to that of the main verb. The present infinitive describes an action, as *going on at the time* of the main verb; the perfect as *prior* or *completed*; the future as *subsequent*.

The student will be aided in deciding what tense of the infinitive to use in a given indirect statement, if he will imagine what tense was used in the direct statement. A present indicative in the direct statement becomes present infinitive in the indirect; an imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect indicative become perfect infinitive; a future tense becomes future infinitive, or **fore** (**futūrum esse**) **ut** and the subjunctive.

Study carefully these examples :

TENSE	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
PRESENT	veniō , <i>I am coming.</i>	(Present) videt mē venīre , <i>he sees that I am coming.</i> (Past) vidit mē venīre , <i>he saw that I was coming.</i>
IMPERFECT	veniēbam , <i>I was coming.</i>	(Present) videt mē vēnisse , <i>he sees that I came, or have come.</i>
PERFECT	vēnī , <i>I have come, or I came.</i>	(Past) vidit mē vēnisse , <i>he saw that I came, or had come.</i>
PLUPERF.	vēneram , <i>I had come.</i>	

TENSE	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
FUTURE	veniam, I shall come.	(Present) videt mē ventūrum (esse), or videt fore ut veniam, <i>he sees that I will come.</i>
		(Past) vidit mē ventūrum (esse), or vidit fore ut venīrem, <i>he saw that I would come.</i>

1. If a verb has no perfect passive participle, its future infinitive must be represented by **fore ut** and subjunctive.

2. The subject of the infinitive should never be omitted in Latin.

162. When the main verb in the direct discourse is used in any one of the following constructions, it becomes *subjunctive* in indirect discourse, and not infinitive.

(1) A direct question, asked for an answer :

(Direct.) **cūr in meās possessiōnēs venīs ?** *why do you come into my domain ?*

(Indirect.) **Ariovistus Caesarī respondit, cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret ?** *Ariovistus replied to Caesar, why did he come into his domain ?*

(2) Any imperative form :

(Direct.) **nōlī Aeduīs bellum inferre,** *do not make war upon the Aeduans.*

(Indirect.) **postulāvit, nē Aeduīs bellum inferret,** *he demanded that he should not make war upon the Aeduans.*

(Direct.) **cum legiōne venī**, *come with a legion.*

(Indirect.) **scribit Labiēnō cum legiōne veniat**, *he writes to Labienus to come (literally, that he should come) with a legion.*

(3) A subjunctive of *exhortation* (115), or *wish* (128, 129), or *deliberation* (110), remains subjunctive in indirect discourse.

[H. 642, 3, 4; (523, II, 1, III); LM. 1023; A. 338-339; G. 651, 652; B. 315, 1, 3, 316.]

163. If the direct discourse is in the form of a *rhetorical* question (*i.e.* one that is asked for effect, and implies its own answer), the main verb becomes *infinitive* in indirect discourse:

(Direct.) **num recēntium iniūriārum memoriā dēpōnere possum?** *can I lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?*

(Indirect.) **Caesar respondit, num recentium iniūriārum memoriā sē dēpōnere posse?** *Caesar replied, could he lay aside the memory of recent wrongs?*

1. It is often hard to distinguish between a *real* and *rhetorical* question. It often depends merely on the writer's point of view.

[H. 642, 2; (523, II, 2); LM. 1024; A. 338; G. 651, R. 1; B. 315, 2.]

164. Translate:

1. I could not leave the city.
2. Quote sentence 1 indirectly after **dixit**.
3. We told him not to wage war on them.
4. Give the direct discourse of sentence 3.
5. He thought that he was going home.

6. Caesar replied asking what did he intend¹ to do?
7. I saw who was coming.
8. Caesar was informed that the enemy would not flee.
9. He trusted that I would not be able to come.

LESSON 21

INDIRECT DISCOURSE. COMPLEX SENTENCES

165. A complex sentence is one consisting of a principal clause and one or more dependent clauses; as “if he *comes*, I shall go”; “we waited until we *saw* her”; “the man whom I *saw* is a German.” The dependent verbs are italicized.

166. When a complex sentence is indirectly quoted, its principal or main verb follows the rules stated in 160, 162, 163. Its dependent verb follows this law:

Each dependent verb becomes *subjunctive*. Its tense depends upon the tense of the introductory verb of saying, thinking, etc., in accordance with the principle of sequence of tenses (131).

[H. 643; (524); LM. 1026; A. 336, 2, 336, B; G. 650, 654; B. 314, 1, 318.]

167. Pronouns in Indirect Discourse. — In changing from direct to indirect discourse, pronouns of the first and second persons are generally changed to pronouns of the third person. The reflexive pronouns (65, 1, 2, 66) refer either to the subject of the introductory verb, or to the subject of the verb of their own clause.

¹ *Intend* = *volō*, or *in animō habeō*.

168. The following examples illustrate the changes of a dependent clause :

DIRECT DISCOURSE

vir quem vidī meus amicus est, the man whom I saw is my friend.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

(Present)

dicit virum quem viderit suum amicum esse, he says that the man whom he saw is his friend.

(Past)

dixit virum quem vidisset suum amicum esse, he said that the man whom he saw (or had seen) was his friend.

169. When conditional sentences are quoted indirectly, the following facts should be noted :

(1) The condition (or protasis), being a dependent clause, is always subjunctive.

(2) The conclusion (or apodosis), being a main clause, becomes the infinitive, unless it is in the form that would change to the subjunctive (162).

(3) The conclusion of a less vivid future condition becomes the *future* infinitive. Hence it is impossible to distinguish vivid and less vivid future conditions when quoted indirectly.

(4) The condition of a contrary-to-fact condition never changes its tense.

(5) The conclusion of a contrary-to-fact condition becomes,

1. if active, the infinitive form obtained by combining the participle in **-ūrus** with **fuisse**.
2. if passive, or without a supine stem, the periphrase **futūrum fuisse ut** and the imperfect subjunctive.

EXAMPLES OF CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

KIND OF CONDITION	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
SIMPLE	<p>sī hōc faciunt, bene est, if they do this, it is well.</p>	<p>(Present) dīcit, sī hōc faciunt, bene esse, he says that, if they do this, it is well.</p> <p>(Past) dīxit, sī hōc facerent, bene esse, he said that, if they did this, it was well.</p>
VIVID FUTURE	<p>sī hōc facient, bene erit, if they do this, it will be well.</p>	<p>(Present) dīcit, sī hōc faciunt, bene futūrum, he says that, if they do this, it will be well.</p> <p>(Past) - dīxit, sī hōc facerent, bene futūrum, he said that, if they did this, it would be well.</p>
LESS VIVID FUTURE	<p>sī hōc faciant, bene sit, if they should do this, it would be well.</p>	<p>Latin same as that of vivid future condition.</p>

EXAMPLES OF CONDITIONS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

KIND OF CONDITION	DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
CONTRARY TO FACT	<p>(Present time) sī hōc facerent, bene esset, if they were (now) doing this, it would be well.</p>	<p>dicīt (or dixit), sī hōc facerent, bene futūrum fuisse (rarely esse), he said (or says) that, if they were doing this, it would be well. (The tense of the verb of saying does not affect the condition.)</p>
	<p>(Past time) sī hōc fēcisset, bene fuisset, if they had done this, it would have been well.</p>	<p>dicīt (or dixit), sī hōc fēcissent, futūrum fuisse ut bene esset, he says (or said) that, if they had done this, it would have been well.</p>

[H. 646, 647; (527); LM. 1034-1040; A. 337; G. 656-659; B. 319-321.]

170. Translate :

1. He said he would do it, if I would help him.
2. Wait until the enemy arrive.
3. Quote sentence 2 indirectly after **dixit**.
4. I think that I know what you did.
5. If Caesar had been present, we would not have been defeated.
6. Quote sentence 5 indirectly after **sciō**.
7. He hoped that we would refrain from injuring her.

8. He replied that, if we needed help, we ought to have come to him.

9. They informed Caesar that they had been sent to learn about this very thing.

LESSON 22

CONCESSION. PROVISIO. CAUSE. CHARACTERISTIC. REVIEW OF RELATIVE CLAUSES

171. Clauses of concession, introduced in English by *although*, are generally expressed in Latin by

1. *Quamquam*, *although*, and the indicative;
2. *Quamvis*, *cum*, *although*, and the subjunctive;
3. *Etsi*, *etiamsi*, *tametsi*, *even if*, with the same construction as *si*. The indicative is more common.

EXAMPLES:—

quamquam festinās, nōn est mora longa, although you are in haste, the delay is not long.

quamvis sis molestus, numquam tē esse cōfitebor malum, although you may be troublesome, I shall never confess that you are an evil.

cum primī ordinēs concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, although the first ranks had fallen, still the others resisted vigorously.

[H. 585, 586, I, II; (515); LM. 872, 875; A. 313; G. 603-606; B. 309.]

172. *Dum, modo, dummodo, if only, provided that*, introducing a proviso, take the subjunctive:

ōderint, dum metuant, let them hate, provided (if only) they fear.

[H. 587; (513, I); LM. 920; A. 314; G. 573; B. 310.]

DIFFERENT USES OF DUM

Review 102, 2, 156.

dum	{	= <i>while</i> ,	present indicative.
		= <i>until</i> ,	{ (1) Indicative to denote <i>actual event</i> .
			{ (2) Subjunctive to express <i>anticipation</i> or <i>expectancy</i> .
		= { <i>provided</i> , <i>if only</i> ,	} subjunctive.

173. A clause that denotes *cause* may be expressed as follows :

1. By **quod**, **quia**, **quoniam**, and the *indicative*, when the reason is *that of the writer or speaker*; with the *subjunctive*, when the reason is regarded *as that of another*.

Aedui Caesarī grātiās ēgērunt, quod sē periculō liberāvisset,
the Aedui thanked Caesar because he had delivered them from danger. (The subjunctive, **liberāvisset**, shows that the reason is that of the Aedui, not the writer's reason.)

quoniam supplicātiō dēcrēta est, celebrātōte illōs diēs,
since a thanksgiving has been decreed, celebrate those days.
(The reason is that of the writer.)

2. By **cum** and the *subjunctive* :

quae cum ita sint, perge, *since these things are so, proceed.*

3. Sometimes by the *participle*. See 87, 3.

4. By a *relative* and the *subjunctive*.

ō fortunāte adulēscēns, qui tuae virtūtis Homērum praecōnem invēneris, *O fortunate youth, since you have found a Homer as the herald of your valor.*

[H. 588, 598; (516, 517); LM. 851, 863; A. 321, 326; G. 538-541; B. 286.]

174. Relative of Characteristic.—The simplest use of a relative clause is to state a *fact* about the antecedent, as: *puer, quem vidi, adest, the boy, whom I saw, is here.* The indicative mood is then used. When, however, the relative clause expresses an *essential quality or characteristic of an indefinite antecedent*, the subjunctive is used, as *nēmō est quī dicat, there is nobody who says, etc.*

The relative clause of characteristic is necessary to complete the meaning of the sentence; therefore, to leave it out would destroy the sentence. A relative with the indicative, however, merely expresses an additional fact about the antecedent; therefore, it may be omitted and a complete statement still remains. Compare the two examples just given. In the first, leave out “whom I saw,” and a complete statement “the boy is here” remains. In the second, omit “who says,” and the rest of the sentence “there is nobody” seems incomplete, as we naturally expect a clause to fill out the meaning. This test, then, will often help the student to determine whether a given relative clause expresses an essential characteristic:

quae civitās est quae nōn ēvertī possit? what state is there which cannot be overthrown?

The relative of characteristic is especially common after such expressions as:

sunt quī, there are some who.
multī sunt quī, there are many who.
nēmō est quī,
nūllus est quī, } there is no one who.
quis est quī, who is there who?
sōlus est quī, he is the only one who.

And others.

1. *Dignus, worthy; indignus, unworthy; aptus, fit; idōneus, suitable,* are often followed by a relative and the subjunctive.

idōneus quī impetret, fit to obtain.

[H. 591, 1, 5, 6, 7; (503); LM. 836–838; A. 320, a, b, f; G. 631, 1, 2; B. 283, 1, 2; 282, 3.]

175. Relative clauses are more frequent in Latin than in English. Their various uses are mentioned below:

1. With the indicative to state a *descriptive fact* about the antecedent. See 174.

2. With the subjunctive to express the *essential characteristic*. See 174.

3. With the subjunctive to denote purpose. See 143, 1.

4. With the subjunctive to denote result. See 145, 1.

5. With the subjunctive to express *cause* and *concession*. See 173, 4.

6. A relative pronoun may be used instead of *sī, if*, to form the protasis of any one of the four classes of conditional sentences. See 126.

(Simple.) *quicumque hōc facit, errat, whoever does this makes a mistake.* (*quicumque* = *sī quis, if any one.*)

(Contrary to fact.) *quicumque hōc fēcisset, errāset, whoever had done this would have made a mistake.*

Such sentences are called conditional relative sentences.

176. Translate :

1. I sent a messenger to inform him.

2. Since you think it is best, I will go.

3. He was put to death, because (they said) he had betrayed his country.

4. Cicero was worthy¹ of being elected consul.

5. He went into the front ranks although he had no shield.

6. There are many soldiers who like to linger around the camp.

7. He came to help me in spite of the fact that² he was my enemy.

8. The Gauls with whom Caesar fought were very brave.

9. I will do it, provided you help me.

¹ See 174, 1.

² *in spite of the fact that.* What conjunction expresses this idea?

LESSON 23

REVIEW AND SIGHT PRACTICE

177. Review the grammatical principles of 141–175.

178. Learn thoroughly the meanings of the following words:

1. claudō.	20. mandō.
2. facilis.	21. iubeō.
3. trānseō.	22. porta.
4. rogō.	23. portus.
5. tēlum.	24. vitō.
6. cohortor.	25. subitō, repentē.
7. patior.	26. moneō.
8. sinō.	27. iaciō.
9. crēdō.	28. cōnor.
10. piger.	29. cōstituō.
11. dēserō.	30. prohibeō.
12. poscō.	31. recūsō.
13. resistō.	32. frūmentum.
14. praeceps.	33. moror̄.
15. exspectō.	34. morior.
16. polliceor.	35. spērō.
17. finis.	36. fidō, cōfidō.
18. impetrō.	37. idōneus.
19. iuvō.	38. prōdō.

179. Let the instructor form several original sentences in English from the words in 178, illustrating the grammatical principles of 141–175. These sentences may be given for oral drill or a written exercise.

PART II

CAESAR, GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

NOTE. The student should not depend on the English-Latin vocabulary for the Latin words. The Latin text upon which each exercise is based should always be consulted for the proper words or phrases.

180

CHAPTER I

<i>a.</i> hī linguā inter sē differunt.	<i>a.</i> these differ from one another in language.
<i>b.</i> proximī Germānīs.	<i>b.</i> nearest the Germans.
<i>c.</i> minimē . . . saepe.	<i>c.</i> very seldom.
<i>d.</i> initium capit ā.	<i>d.</i> begins at.

1. There are three parts in Gaul as a whole.
2. All of us differed from one another in many ways.¹
3. The Belgae are nearest the Rhine.
4. The Gauls very seldom surpass the Germans in bravery.
5. It has been said that Gaul begins at the river Rhine.

181

CHAPTER II

<i>a.</i> civitātī persuāsit ut exirent.	<i>a.</i> he persuaded the state to go forth.
<i>b.</i> hīs rēbus fiēbat.	<i>b.</i> the result of this was.
<i>c.</i> unā ex parte.	<i>c.</i> on one side.

¹ ways = things.

1. Orgetorix persuaded the Helvetians to get possession of Gaul.
2. The Rhine bounds the Helvetians on one side.
3. It was very easy to form¹ a conspiracy.
4. The result of this was that Caesar waged war on the Helvetians.

182

CHAPTER III

<p><i>a.</i> quam m̄ximās.</p> <p><i>b.</i> ad eās rēs cōficiendās.</p> <p><i>c.</i> nōn esse dubium quīn plūrimum Helvētī pos- sent.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> as great as possible.</p> <p><i>b.</i> to accomplish these things, <i>or,</i> for the purpose of carrying out these plans.</p> <p><i>c.</i> that there was no doubt that the Helvetians were the most powerful.</p>
--	--

1. They got together as many carts as possible.
2. Orgetorix was chosen to undertake this embassy.
3. He persuaded them to exchange² an oath-bound pledge.
4. There is no doubt that the Helvetians are very powerful.

183

CHAPTER IV

<p><i>a.</i> poenam sequī oportēbat.</p> <p><i>b.</i> nē causam dīceret sē ēripuit.</p> <p><i>c.</i> neque abest suspīciō quīn ipse sibi mortem cōn- scīverit.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> punishment must (had to) follow.</p> <p><i>b.</i> he saved himself from pleading his case.</p> <p><i>c.</i> and there is a suspicion that he committed suicide.</p>
--	--

¹ form = make.² Do not use the infinitive.

1. Orgetorix ought not to be burned.
2. He gathered together all the friends that he had.
3. He will save himself from pleading his case.
4. The Helvetians think that he committed suicide.

184

CHAPTER V

<i>a.</i> ē finibus suis exeunt. <i>b.</i> parātiōrēs ad omnia perī- cula subeunda.		<i>a.</i> they emigrate. <i>b.</i> more ready to undergo all dangers.
---	--	---

1. The Helvetii nevertheless attempted to emigrate.
2. Each man was more ready to take grain.
3. They persuaded their neighbors to adopt the same plan.

185

CHAPTER VI

<i>a.</i> bonō animō in populum Rōmānum. <i>b.</i> L. Pisōne, A. Gabiniō cōn- sulibus.		<i>a.</i> friendly (or well) disposed toward the Roman peo- ple. <i>b.</i> in the consulship of Lucius Piso and Aulus Gabinius.
---	--	---

1. The road is so¹ narrow that carts can hardly be hauled one by one.
2. The Helvetii thought that the Allobroges were not well disposed toward Caesar.
3. In our consulship they were compelled to go through their territories.
4. When the bridge had been built,² they got everything ready.

¹ tam.² faciō.

186

CHAPTER VII

<i>a.</i> Helvētīi certiorēs factī sunt.	<i>a.</i> the Helvetii were informed (or learned).
<i>b.</i> lēgātōs mittunt quī dicerent.	<i>b.</i> they sent ambassadors to say.
<i>c.</i> dum milītēs convenīrent.	<i>c.</i> until the soldiers should assemble.

1. Caesar set out from Geneva.
2. He will send an ambassador to inform them.
3. Men of unfriendly spirit will not refrain from wrongdoing.
4. He will deliberate until they return.
5. Caesar is informed of this.

187

CHAPTER VIII

<i>a.</i> mīlia passuum decem.	<i>a.</i> ten miles.
<i>b.</i> negat sē posse.	<i>b.</i> he says he cannot.
<i>c.</i> hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.	<i>c.</i> they gave up this attempt.

1. A wall was extended for sixteen miles.
2. Caesar says they cannot cross without his ¹ consent.
3. After the redoubts had been fortified,² the ambassadors came back.
4. The soldiers will not give up the fortification of the camp.

188

CHAPTER IX

<i>a.</i> Sēquanīs invītīs, ire nōn poterant.	<i>a.</i> if the Sequani were unwilling, they could not go.
<i>b.</i> Orgetōrigis filiam in mātrimōnium dūxerat.	<i>b.</i> he had married the daughter of Orgetorix.

¹ To whom does this refer?² Use the participle.

1. The Helvetii cannot emigrate, if Caesar is unwilling.
2. By the intercession of Dumnorix they could persuade them.
3. He wished to marry her.
4. They exchanged as many hostages as possible.

189

CHAPTER X

<i>a.</i> Helvētiis esse in animō. <i>b.</i> māgnō cum periculō prō- vinciae futurum. <i>c.</i> mūnitiōnī Labiēnum prae- ficit.	<i>a.</i> that the Helvetii intend. <i>b.</i> that it would be very dangerous for the province. <i>c.</i> he puts Labienus in com- mand of the fortification.
---	---

1. The Helvetii intended to do this.
2. The Helvetii perceived that it would be very dangerous for them to march¹ through the province.
3. He put a lieutenant in command of the legion.
4. In three days he arrived among the Allobroges.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I-X

190. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing the declensions of nouns and adjectives, and the principal parts of verbs :

1. finis. 2. finitimus. 3. flūmen. 4. cōpia , sing. and pl. 5. tempus. 6. iter. 7. animus , sing. and pl. 8. miles.	9. legiō. 10. exercitus. 11. pars , several meanings. 12. rēs frūmentāria. 13. civitas. 14. proelium. 15. singuli. 16. omnis , sing. and pl.
--	---

¹ Do not use infinitive; see text.

17. <i>quisque</i> .	34. <i>cōstituō</i> .
18. <i>reliquus</i> .	35. <i>īstituō</i> .
19. <i>alius</i> .	36. <i>proficīscor</i> .
20. <i>alter</i> .	37. <i>cōgō</i> .
21. <i>ūnus</i> .	38. <i>sequor</i> .
22. <i>māgnus</i> , compare.	39. <i>iubeō</i> .
23. <i>multus</i> , compare.	40. <i>imperō</i> .
24. <i>nūllus</i> .	41. <i>impetrō</i> .
25. <i>nōnnūllus</i> .	42. <i>cōnficiō</i> .
26. <i>ūllus</i> .	43. <i>ūtor</i> .
27. <i>superior</i> .	44. <i>conveniō</i> .
28. <i>contendō</i> .	45. <i>existimō</i> .
29. <i>trānseō</i> .	46. <i>praesum</i> .
30. <i>gerō</i> .	47. <i>antecēdō</i> } with the
31. <i>prohibeō</i> .	48. <i>praecēdō</i> } acc.
32. <i>persuādeō</i> .	49. <i>praestō</i> .
33. <i>cōnsistō</i> .	50. <i>praeficiō</i> .

191. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax :

1. Limit of motion, 17.
2. Extent of space and duration of time, 16.
3. Dative with compound verbs, 33.
4. Ablative with *ūtor*, etc., 44.
5. Indirect statements — main clause, 160.
6. Construction with *persuādeō*, 32, 147.
7. Construction after verbs of commanding, 147, 148.

192. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 190 and the constructions of 191. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

193

CHAPTER XI

<p><i>a.</i> oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint.</p> <p><i>b.</i> sibi nihil esse reliquī.</p> <p><i>c.</i> Caesar nōn expectandum sibi statuit.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> their towns ought not to have been captured.</p> <p><i>b.</i> that they had nothing left.</p> <p><i>c.</i> Caesar decided that he ought not to wait.</p>
--	---

1. Their fields ought^{1*} not to be devastated.
2. We have nothing left except our fields.
3. The Aedui ought¹ to have been able to defend themselves and their possessions.
4. We must not wait.

194

CHAPTER XII

<p><i>a.</i> ea princeps poenās per- solvit.</p> <p><i>b.</i> Pisonem eodem proeliō quō Cassium interfē- cerant.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> that was the first to pay the penalty.</p> <p><i>b.</i> they had killed Piso in the same battle with Cassius.</p>
--	--

1. I could not judge by² looking at it in which direction the Saône flowed.
2. They were not informed that the legions had started from camp.
3. Caesar was the first to inflict a disaster on the Helvetii.
4. Cassius was killed in the same battle with Piso.
5. Caesar crossed the river so quickly³ that the enemy fled.

* These numbers in the foot-notes refer to sections of this book.

¹ See III, 112.

³ celeriter.

² "by looking at it," use a single word.

195

CHAPTER XIII

<i>a.</i> pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat.	<i>a.</i> he has a bridge built over the Saône.
<i>b.</i> nē committeret ut is locus nōmen caperet.	<i>b.</i> let him not cause (<i>or</i> allow) this place to receive its name.

1. Caesar had his army led across in one day.
2. Divico said, "Remember¹ our valor."
3. "If you remember the destruction of your army, you will not persist in war."
4. He said that, if Caesar would remember² that old disaster, he would not persist in war.

196

CHAPTER XIV

<i>a.</i> Caesar respondit sibi mi- nus dubitātiōnis darī.	<i>a.</i> Caesar replied that he had less hesitation.
<i>b.</i> commissum (esse) ā sē quā rē timēret.	<i>b.</i> that he had done anything to make him afraid (to be afraid of).
<i>c.</i> secundiōrēs rēs.	<i>c.</i> prosperity.

1. I have done nothing to be afraid of.
2. Caesar says that he will remember the injuries which they have inflicted.
3. Although the gods grant you prosperity, still they will punish you for your crimes.
4. Caesar replied, "I have less hesitation."
5. Caesar thought that they would not apologize to him for the wrongs which had been done.

¹ See 25.² Review carefully 169.

197

CHAPTER XV

- a.* aliēnō locō.
b. paucī dē nostrīs.
c. satis habēbat.

- a.* on unfavorable ground.
b. a few of our men.
c. he deemed it sufficient, was satisfied.

1. He sent ahead a few of¹ the cavalry to see in what direction they had marched.

2. The enemy followed so eagerly that they joined battle on unfavorable ground.

3. Caesar is satisfied to harass the enemy's rear.

198

CHAPTER XVI

- a.* nē pābulī quidem.
b. diem ex diē.
c. māgnā ex parte.

- a.* not even of fodder (the emphatic word is always placed between).
b. from day to day.
c. in great measure, chiefly, very largely.

1. Not even grain could be brought up the river in boats.

2. Caesar was put off by the Aedui from day to day.

3. The day is at hand when² grain ought to be bought.

4. Although³ the war had been undertaken chiefly because of the entreaties of Liscus, yet Caesar was deserted.

199

CHAPTER XVII

- a.* plūrimum valēre.
b. hōs multitūdinem dētērrēre
 nē frūmentum cōferant.

- a.* to have very great influence.
b. that these prevent the multitude from bringing grain.

¹ See 23, 1.

² Do not use cum, see text.

³ "although . . . undertaken," see tam . . . hostibus in text.

1. Some people have more influence than the officers.
2. They said that, if the Romans were victorious, they would deprive the Aedui of their liberty.
3. I don't doubt that Lincus spoke under¹ compulsion.
4. Caesar perceived that they were frightened from doing this.

200

CHAPTER XVIII

<i>a.</i> plūribus praesentibus.	<i>a.</i> in the presence of many.
<i>b.</i> summam in spem venīre.	<i>b.</i> that he had the greatest hopes.
<i>c.</i> quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī miserant.	<i>c.</i> which the Aedui had sent to help Caesar.

1. Caesar did not discuss these matters in Dumnorix's presence.

2. Dumnorix was a man of great liberality.²
3. When I bid, who will dare bid against me?
4. I have learned that Dumnorix did not favor Caesar,³ because he was a Roman.
5. I have very great hopes of buying up the revenues at a low price.⁴
6. I have come to help you.
7. A few days ago the cavalry had fled.

201

CHAPTER XIX

<i>a.</i> satis esse causae arbitrābātur quā rē in eum animadverteret.	<i>a.</i> he thought he had sufficient reason for punishing him.
<i>b.</i> nē offenderet verēbātur.	<i>b.</i> he feared that he would offend.
<i>c.</i> hortātur ut de eō statuat.	<i>c.</i> he urges him to punish him.

¹ "under compulsion" = having been compelled.

² See 49, 22.

³ See 32.

⁴ See 50.

1. The Romans have sufficient reason for punishing Dumnorix.

2. I will have¹ him called before me.

3. We are afraid that Caesar will punish Dumnorix without the knowledge² of his brother.

4. I urged him to converse with you.

5. What did they say in my presence?

202

CHAPTER XX

a. nec quemquam ex eō plūs
quam sē dolōris capere.

b. quā ex rē futūrum (ut and
subj.)

c. tantī ēius apud sē grātiā
esse ostendit.

a. and that no one feels more
pain in consequence of
this than himself.

b. that the result of this would
be that, etc.

c. he shows that his regard for
him is so great.

1. No one felt more pain as a result of this than Diviciacus.

2. While I had very little power at home, he used all his resources to my destruction.

3. My regard for you is so great, that I urge you to avoid³ all suspicion.

4. The result of it was that he pardoned the wrong for his brother's sake.

5. I did not know with whom he was talking.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XI-XX

203. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of the verbs, and declensions of nouns.

¹ See in text — quod obsidēs . . . cūrāset.

² Cf. inscientibus ipsīs in text.

³ Do not use infinitive.

- | | |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. <i>dēbeō.</i> | 26. <i>concedō.</i> Cf. no. 9. |
| 2. <i>exspectō.</i> | 27. <i>aliēnus.</i> |
| 3. <i>statuō.</i> | 28. <i>pauci.</i> |
| 4. <i>adgredior.</i> | 29. <i>agmen novissimum.</i> |
| 5. <i>interficiō.</i> | 30. <i>mille.</i> |
| 6. <i>committō</i> , several meanings. | 31. <i>cotidiē.</i> |
| 7. <i>coepi.</i> | 32. <i>pūblicē.</i> |
| 8. <i>cōnsuēscō.</i> | 33. <i>frīgus.</i> |
| 9. <i>discēdō.</i> | 34. <i>prex.</i> |
| 10. <i>polliceor.</i> | 35. <i>cōncilium.</i> |
| 11. <i>cadō.</i> | 36. <i>cōnsilium.</i> |
| 12. <i>praetermittō.</i> | 37. <i>nēmō, nūllius.</i> |
| 13. <i>sē cōferre.</i> | 38. <i>pretium.</i> |
| 14. <i>relinquō.</i> | 39. <i>equester.</i> |
| 15. <i>queror.</i> | 40. <i>supplicium.</i> |
| 16. <i>quaerō.</i> | 41. <i>lacrima.</i> |
| 17. <i>impediō.</i> | 42. <i>ops</i> , sing. and pl. |
| 18. <i>dubitō.</i> | 43. <i>perniciēs.</i> |
| 19. <i>cōgnōscō</i> (<i>dē</i> , not acc.). | 44. <i>vulgus</i> (note gender). |
| 20. <i>impedimentum.</i> | 45. <i>dolor.</i> |
| 21. <i>dubitātiō.</i> | 46. <i>custōs.</i> |
| 22. <i>calamitās.</i> | 47. <i>quisquam.</i> |
| 23. <i>meminī.</i> | 48. <i>quisque.</i> |
| 24. <i>reminīscor.</i> | 49. <i>studium.</i> |
| 25. <i>praesidium.</i> | 50. <i>liberī.</i> |

204. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax:

1. Genitive of the whole, 23.
2. Ablative of separation, 39.
3. Dative of purpose; dative of agent; 37, 95.
4. Constructions with *oportet* and *dēbeō*, 111, 112.

5. Passive periphrastic conjunction; gerundive with *cūrō*, 95.¹

6. Clauses of result, 144, 145.

205. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 203 and the constructions of 204. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

206

CHAPTER XXI

a. quī cōgnōscerent mīsit.

b. quī reī militāris peritissimus habēbātur.

a. he sent men to ascertain.

b. who was considered very skillful in military affairs.

1. Scouts informed Caesar that the ascent was easy.
2. He will send men to find out where the enemy have gone.
3. He said that Considius was considered skillful in military matters.
4. Show me what your plan is.

207

CHAPTER XXII

a. equō admissō.

b. multō diē.

c. quō cōsuērat intervāllō.

a. at full speed.

b. late in the day.

c. at the usual interval.

1. He found out that the enemy were coming at full speed.
2. Late in the day, Caesar was informed that the enemy were not more than a mile from his camp.

¹ When no direct references are given to Part I, the student should search the text and refer to his grammar for the desired construction.

3. Do not join battle unless they attack us.
4. He seized ¹ the mountain and awaited the enemy.
5. They followed at their usual speed.

208

CHAPTER XXIII

<i>a.</i> bīdūm supererat cum frū- mentum metīrī opor- tēret.	<i>a.</i> two days remain, within which (before) grain ought to be measured out, etc.
<i>b.</i> eō magis.	<i>b.</i> the more so, all the more.

1. The commander ought to look out for supplies.
2. The more so because only a day remains before we must begin battle.
3. I think they have changed their plan ² and will cut us off from supplies.

209

CHAPTER XXIV

<i>a.</i> in summō iugō.	<i>a.</i> on top of the ridge.
<i>b.</i> sub=prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.	<i>b.</i> they advanced close to our first line.

1. He sends two legions to fill up the top of the hill.
2. Order your men to follow with the baggage.
3. They will form ³ a phalanx and advance close to our line.

210

CHAPTER XXV

<i>a.</i> in eōs impetum fēcērunt.	<i>a.</i> they attacked them.
<i>b.</i> Gallīs māgnō erat impedī- mentō.	<i>b.</i> the Gauls were greatly hindered.
<i>c.</i> conversa signa intulērunt.	<i>c.</i> they faced about and charged.

¹ Do not use the indicative.

² "changed their plan," use abl. absolute.

³ Do not use the indicative.

1. Caesar removed all of the horses in order to equalize the danger.

2. We are greatly hindered in fighting, because we cannot throw away our shields.

3. When we attacked them, they withdrew to the mountain.

4. They guarded those who¹ had been conquered.

5. Face about and renew the fight.

211

CHAPTER XXVI

a. diū atque ācritēr pūgnātum
est.

b. ad multam noctem.

c. sē eōdem locō quō Hel-
vētiōs habitūrum.

a. long and fiercely they
fought.

b. till late at night.

c. that he would consider
them in the same light
as the Helvetians.

1. As our men came up, the enemy fought with them long into the night.

2. If you help them in any way, I will consider you in the same light as I do² the enemy.

3. There will be a vigorous fight around the baggage.

4. Letters are sent to the Lingones not to help the Helvetians.

5. Our men delayed burying³ their dead for many days.

212

CHAPTER XXVII

a. dum ea conquīruntur.

b. primā nocte.

a. while they were hunting
these up.

b. at nightfall.

¹ Do not use the relative. See 87.

² "I do," omit.

³ use prep. and no in.

1. When he had demanded their arms, with tears they obeyed.
2. While they were being punished, they wept.
3. At the beginning of night, they did not surrender their arms.
4. I think they will leave camp.

213 CHAPTERS XXVIII AND XXIX

<i>a.</i> Helvētiōs revertī iussit.	<i>a.</i> he ordered the Helvetians • to return.
<i>b.</i> Allobrogibus imperāvit ut facerent.	<i>b.</i> he ordered the Allobroges to furnish.
<i>c.</i> parem atque.	<i>c.</i> same as.

1. I will order¹ them to hand over the fugitives.
2. The Aedui requested him to grant this.
3. I ordered² them to be received in surrender.
4. They have the same liberty as we have.
5. The sum total is many thousand.

214 CHAPTER XXX

<i>a.</i> petiērunt utī id facere li- cēret.	<i>a.</i> they begged permission to do this.
<i>b.</i> iūre iūrāndō nē quis ēnūn- tiāret inter sē sānxērunt.	<i>b.</i> they ordained by an oath with one another that no one should disclose.

1. At the completion of the war, Caesar got possession of many states.
2. Although³ I have inflicted punishment on you, still you congratulate me.
3. I beg permission to appoint a council.

¹ Use imperō.

² Use iubeō.

³ See 171.

4. Ordain under oath that no one make war on the Romans.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XXI-XXX

215. Review thoroughly the meaning of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of the verbs, and the declensions of nouns and adjectives:

- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1. revertō. | 25. dēditīō. |
| 2. licet. | 26. idem. |
| 3. habeō, in pass. | 27. pār. |
| 4. petō. | 28. similis. |
| 5. poscō. | 29. signum. |
| 6. postulō. | 30. rūsus. |
| 7. cōnsidō. | 31. prope. |
| 8. cōnfidō. | 32. aciēs. |
| 9. cohortor. | 33. lātus. |
| 10. audeō. | 34. latus. |
| 11. sustineō. | 35. vulnus. |
| 12. bellum inferō, w. dat. or
<i>in</i> and acc. | 36. nūntius. |
| 13. resistō. | 37. vesper. |
| 14. intermittō. | 38. ratiō. |
| 15. permittō. | 39. ūsus. |
| 16. āmittō. | 40. salūs. |
| 17. redeō. | 41. condiciō. |
| 18. pārēō. | 42. atque, see 82. |
| 19. moror. | 43. peritus. imperitus. |
| 20. morior. | 44. commūnis. |
| 21. aperiō. | 45. opportūnus. |
| 22. vereor. | 46. medius. |
| 23. dēdō. | 47. quantus. |
| 24. dēditicius. | 48. tantus. |
| | 49. ācritēr. |

216. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax:

1. Translations of the ablative absolute.
2. Ablative of degree of difference, 48.
3. Genitive with adjectives; dative with adjectives, 24, 35.
4. Impersonal verbs, 27. (Consult grammar.)
5. Double accusative with verbs of asking, etc., 15.
6. Construction with *petō*, *quaerō*, *postulō*, 15, 1.
7. Relative clauses, 175.

217. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 215 and the constructions of 216. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

218

CHAPTER XXXI

<i>a.</i> semel atque iterum.	<i>a.</i> again and again, more than once.
<i>b.</i> neque recūsātūrōs quō minus essent.	<i>b.</i> nor refuse to be.
<i>c.</i> quī addūcī nōn potuerit ut iūrāret.	<i>c.</i> who could not be induced to take an oath.
<i>d.</i> nōbilissimī cūiusque.	<i>d.</i> of all of the highest rank.
<i>e.</i> dē omnibus supplicium sūmere.	<i>e.</i> to inflict punishment on all, to punish all.
<i>f.</i> dētērrēre nē māior multitudō trādūcātur.	<i>f.</i> to frighten a greater multitude from crossing.

1. May we treat with you about what they said?
2. Diviciacus says that the Germans have been called in by the Sequani.
3. We have been defeated¹ again and again and have lost very many men.

¹ Do not use indicative.

4. He says that those who were very powerful have given hostages.

5. We won't refuse to implore aid of the Romans.

6. You are the only one who¹ can't be induced to ask for help.

7. Not being bound² by an oath, I will come to Rome.

8. A serious disaster befell the vanquished.

9. The result will be in a few years that we shall all be driven out of this place.

10. All of the highest rank were defeated.

11. If everything isn't done according to my wish, I shall have to seek other dwellings.

12. Caesar frightened the Germans from emigrating.

13. We shall punish you.

219

CHAPTER XXXII

a. *nē* in occultō quidem.

a. not even in secret.

b. Sēquanīs omnēs cruciātūs
essent perferendī.

b. the Sequani must endure all
tortures.

1. What was the cause of this behavior?³

2. I asked him who made the speech.

3. He noticed that they did not dare even to complain.

4. We ought not to dread his cruelty when he is absent.⁴

220

CHAPTER XXXIII

a. sibi eam rem cūrae futūram.

a. that he would look out for
this matter.

b. sibi temperātūrōs quīn ex-
īrent.

b. that they would refrain from
going forth.

c. quam mātūrrimē.

c. as early as possible, at the
earliest possible moment.

¹ See 174.

² See 85, 3.

³ *rēs*.

⁴ "when . . . absent," use one word.

1. I will look out for that.
2. It will be dangerous for the Romans, if the Germans get into the habit of ¹ crossing the Rhine.
3. Ariovistus could not refrain from assuming insolence.
4. I think I ought to undertake this matter at the earliest possible moment.

221

CHAPTER XXXIV

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>a.</i> placuit eī ut mitteret. | <i>a.</i> he resolved to send. |
| <i>b.</i> quid Caesarī negōtī esset. | <i>b.</i> what business Caesar had. |

1. I am resolved to treat with you.
2. If I had wished ² anything, I would have sent ambassadors.
3. Quote 2 indirectly after dīxit.³
4. What business have you in Gaul anyhow?

222

CHAPTER XXXV

- | | |
|---|--|
| <i>a.</i> hanc grātiām referret. | <i>a.</i> he made this return. |
| <i>b.</i> sibi perpetuam amīcitiām
cum eō futūram. | <i>b.</i> that he would have lasting
friendship with him. |

1. What return are you making us?
2. I demand of you not to lead any army across the Rhine.
3. If you should ⁴ do this, I would have lasting friendship with you.
4. If I gain my request, I'll not neglect my friends.

¹ "get . . . of," use one word.

³ See 169, 4, 5.

² See 123.

⁴ See 125.

223

CHAPTER XXXVI

<i>a.</i> quī faceret. <i>b.</i> intellēctūrum quid Ger- mānī possent.		<i>a.</i> since he made (see 173, 4). <i>b.</i> he would find out what strength the Germans have.
--	--	--

1. It is a right of war that the conquerors¹ should rule as they wish.
2. I ought to exercise my right, since I have conquered you.
3. If you think we have no strength, come on.
4. If you make war on us, we will pay the taxes.
5. Quote 4 indirectly after dixerunt.

224 CHAPTERS XXXVII AND XXXVIII

<i>a.</i> Aeduī veniēbant questum quod Harūdēs populā- rentur. <i>b.</i> mōns māgnā altitūdine.		<i>a.</i> the Aedui came to com- plain because the Haru- des were laying waste. <i>b.</i> a mountain of great height.
--	--	--

1. They are complaining because² peace cannot be purchased even by giving hostages.
2. I must hasten by forced marches so that their forces may not unite.
3. The enemy are advancing to occupy the town.
4. Resistance cannot easily be made, if we do not take great precautions.
5. The town was very useful for war, because¹ it contained a mountain of great size.
6. A river touches the base of it on either side.

¹ See 71, 7.² See 173.

225

CHAPTER XXXIX

<i>a.</i> dum ad Vesontiōnem morātur.	<i>a.</i> while he was delaying near Vesontio.
<i>b.</i> alius aliā causā inlātā.	<i>b.</i> each one presenting a different excuse.
<i>c.</i> petēbat ut discēdere liceret.	<i>c.</i> begged permission to depart.

1. While we were delaying a few days, the whole army was seized with fear.

2. The Germans are men of marvelous bravery.

3. Caesar asserted that this panic started with those who had no experience in war.

4. One presented one excuse, another another.¹

5. Caesar's troops will not beg permission to advance.

6. He feared that they would not be obedient to the word of command.

226

CHAPTER XL

<i>a.</i> quam in partem.	<i>a.</i> in what direction.
<i>b.</i> sibi persuādērī.	<i>b.</i> that he was persuaded.
<i>c.</i> quantum bonī.	<i>c.</i> how much advantage.
<i>d.</i> parēs esse nostrō exercituī.	<i>d.</i> to be a match for our army.
<i>e.</i> neque suī potestātem fēcisset.	<i>e.</i> and had not given (them) a chance at him.

1. I have a right to inquire in what direction we are marching.

2. Why did he call a council?

3. We are persuaded² that he will not bring war upon us.

¹ See 73.

² See 32, 2.

4. If you should lose confidence in your commander, what, pray, should you fear?

5. You can judge how much courage the enemy have, now that the Cimbri have been defeated.¹

6. The Romans feared that the Germans were their match.

7. If you give me a chance at you, I will defeat you more by stratagem than valor.

8. I know that Caesar will take care of this.

9. I know that whoever does not advance² has no confidence in the general.

10. Which is the stronger, duty or fear?

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XXXI-XL

227. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following verbs, memorizing principal parts of verbs, declensions of adjectives and nouns:

1. recūsō.	14. accēdō.
2. dēspērō (<i>dē</i> , not acc.).	15. experior.
3. supplicium sūmō.	16. efficiō.
4. adsuēfaciō.	17. adsum.
5. adsuēscō.	18. dēsum.
6. suscipiō.	19. impellō.
7. placeō.	20. temperō.
8. gratiam referō.	21. dēterreō.
9. gratiam habeō.	22. cruciātus.
10. gratiās agō.	23. absēns.
11. negligō.	24. mātūrē.
12. praecaveō.	25. negōtium.
13. arcessō.	26. omnīnō.

¹ Use participle.

² See 166.

27. perpetuus.	39. māgnitūdō.
28. iterum.	40. difficultās.
29. semel.	41. conloquium.
30. vērō.	42. commeātus.
31. paulātim.	43. sēdēs.
32. paulisper.	44. cōnsuētūdō.
33. paulum.	45. uter.
34. simulātiō.	46. uterque.
35. ordō.	47. plērumque.
36. palūs.	48. hūc.
37. facinus.	49. praetereā.
38. diligētia.	50. subitō.

228. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax:

1. Ablative of description, 49.
2. Genitive of description, 22.
3. Genitive of the gerund and gerundive with *causā*, 142. 2.
4. Supine in *um*, 96.
5. Causal clauses introduced by *quod*, 173.
6. Substantive clauses with verbs of hindering, refusing, and with verbs of accomplishing, 150.
7. Indirect questions, 134.

229. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 227 and the constructions of 228. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

230

CHAPTER XLI

- a.* eī grātiās ēgit.
b. ā nostrīs abesse.

- a.* thanked him.
b. were distant from ours.

1. We thank Caesar for delivering¹ such a speech.
2. They were quite ready to apologize to me.
3. The policy of the campaign is the commander's, not ours.
4. Scouts informed us that the enemy were fifty miles away from our camp.

231

CHAPTER XLII

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|
| <i>a.</i> sī quid opus factō esset. | <i>a.</i> if there were any need of action. |
| <i>b.</i> in locō habitūrum. | <i>b.</i> would regard as. |

1. You may do what you have asked for.
2. Don't refuse² me when I ask.
3. Caesar was afraid that the conference would be broken off.
4. If there is any need of cavalry, let the soldiers be put on horses.
5. Regard us as your friends.

232

CHAPTER XLIII

- | | |
|---|---|
| <i>a.</i> ubi eō ventum est. | <i>a.</i> when they came there. |
| <i>b.</i> ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent. | <i>b.</i> existed between themselves and the Aedui. |

1. Ariovistus said he would carry on the conference³ on horseback.
2. When they had come to the mound, Caesar showed what gifts the Senate had bestowed.
3. Reasons for intimacy exist between you and them.

¹ "for delivering" = because he delivered.

² See 116.

³ "carry on the conference," one word.

4. I was called a friend by the Senate before you came into Gaul.

5. I will make this demand, not to cross with your army.

233

CHAPTER XLIV

<p><i>a.</i> trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē rogātum ā Gallīs.</p> <p><i>b.</i> sibi praesidiō esse.</p> <p><i>c.</i> quod trādūcat.</p> <p><i>d.</i> sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> that he had crossed the Rhine at the request of the Gauls.</p> <p><i>b.</i> to be a protection to him.</p> <p><i>c.</i> as to his leading. (trādūcat would be indicative in direct discourse.)</p> <p><i>d.</i> that he had come into Gaul before the Roman people.</p>
---	--

1. I will leave home at your request.

2. I did not make war on you,¹ but you on me.

3. If you wish to enjoy peace, pay the tribute.

4. I crossed the Rhine voluntarily to impose² a tax on the vanquished.

5. If you should be a hindrance to me, I would not seek your friendship.

6. As to my leaving my territory, I am doing this to defend myself.

7. I say that you made an attack before we did.³

8. Why ought you to use our help?

9. I am not so simple as not to know that Caesar is pretending friendship.

10. He says he will do whatever you say.

¹ Note the order of the Latin in the text, . . . nōn sēsē intulisse.

² "to impose" — express in several ways.

³ Omit.

234

CHAPTERS XLV AND XLVI

<i>a.</i> Galliam esse Ariovistī.	<i>a.</i> that Gaul belonged to Ariovistus.
<i>b.</i> quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset.	<i>b.</i> whom the Roman people had pardoned.
<i>c.</i> committendum nōn putābat ut dīcī posset.	<i>c.</i> he thought that no ground should be given for saying.

1. My habit doesn't allow me to¹ desert my allies.
2. Gaul belongs to Caesar rather than to Ariovistus.
3. They would have enjoyed their own laws, had you pardoned² them.
4. Caesar orders his men not to throw stones at the Germans.
5. No ground ought to be given for saying that we excluded them from the conference.
6. Don't hurl back your weapons.

235

CHAPTER XLVII

<i>a.</i> bīduō post.	<i>a.</i> two days afterwards.
<i>b.</i> retinēri quīn conicerent.	<i>b.</i> to be kept from hurling.
<i>c.</i> quā multā ūtēbātur.	<i>c.</i> which he spoke fluently.

1. Three days afterwards he said he would send some one as an ambassador.
2. I will keep the enemy from throwing stones at you.
3. If you cannot go yourself, send a man of great courage.
4. Can you speak Latin fluently?

¹ Don't use infinitive.² See 123.

236

CHAPTER XLVIII

<i>a.</i> ut eī potestās nōn deēsset.	<i>a.</i> that he might not lack the opportunity.
<i>b.</i> singulī singulōs.	<i>b.</i> one apiece.
<i>c.</i> sī quid erat dūrius.	<i>c.</i> if there was any difficulty.

1. If there is¹ any difficulty, they will not lack the opportunity.

2. If there were any difficulty, I would not lack the opportunity.

3. If there should be any difficulty, we should not lack the opportunity.

4. They will select one horse apiece.

5. We shall have to fight a cavalry battle.

237

CHAPTERS XLIX AND L

<i>a.</i> quam ob rem.	<i>a.</i> why.
<i>b.</i> utrum ex ūsū esset necne.	<i>b.</i> whether it was expedient or not.

1. Caesar chose a place beyond the place where the enemy was.

2. He will send the third line to fortify² the camp.

3. At the completion of the work, they retreated into camp.

4. I will ask him why he does not give us a chance to fight.

5. Is it the divine will for us to storm the camp?

6. Tell me whether the moon is full or not.

¹ Review 126.

² Express in several ways.

238

CHAPTERS LI AND LII

<i>a.</i> proximō diē, postrīdiē eius diē.	<i>a.</i> on the next day.
<i>b.</i> repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī quī insilirent.	<i>b.</i> there were very many of our men who jumped, etc.

1. On the next day he did not use the soldiers of the legions for show.

2. At our departure we shall implore you not to leave any hope in flight.

3. I will put an officer in charge of each legion.

4. They attacked us so quickly that a hand to hand encounter resulted.

5. Send the cavalry to help them.

6. There are many who¹ are engaged in the battle line.

239

CHAPTERS LIII AND LIV

<i>a.</i> hostēs terga vertērunt.	<i>a.</i> the enemy fled.
<i>b.</i> neque prius fugere dēsti- tērunt quam pervēnērunt.	<i>b.</i> and they did not cease fly- ing until they arrived.
<i>c.</i> sē praesente.	<i>c.</i> in his presence.

1. When they cannot rely on their strength, they will flee.

2. Our men did not cease pursuing until they killed many thousand.

3. He was bound and dragged in flight.

4. Ariovistus is said to have escaped in a small boat that he had found.²

5. They cast lots in our presence.

6. Now that Ariovistus had been defeated, Caesar thought he was safe.

¹ See 174.

² "that . . . found" — one word.

240 REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XLI-LIII

Review thoroughly the following vocabulary, memorizing the principal parts of the verbs, and the declensions of the nouns and adjectives:

1. certior fiō	} (<i>dē</i> and abl. of thing. <i>per</i> or <i>ab</i> with person.)	25. adulēscēns
2. certiōrem faciō		26. sententia.
3. tollō.		27. regiō.
4. interpōnō.		28. labor.
5. intercēdō.		29. dētrimentum.
6. interdīcō.		30. praemium.
7. exeō.		31. aditus.
8. dēfendō.		32. incolumis.
9. simulō.		33. idōneus, cf. aliēnus.
10. ignōscō.		34. inīquus.
11. cōnficiō.		35. aequus.
12. sē recipere.		36. utrimque.
13. reperiō.		37. statim.
14. inveniō.		38. comminus.
15. praeficiō.		39. complūrēs.
16. cōsulō, with dat. and acc.		40. dūrus.
17. doceō.		41. tēlum.
18. trānseō.		42. sponte.
19. circumstisō.		43. stīpendium.
20. trānsdūcō.		44. domus.
21. nancīscor.		45. eō (adv.).
22. tergum.		46. ultrō.
23. subsidium.		47. factum.
24. genus.		48. opus, indecl.
		49. opus, eris.

241. Review thoroughly the following principles of syntax:

1. The predicate genitive (see grammar).
2. Accusative with compounds, *circum, praeter, trans*.
3. Double questions, direct and indirect, 80.
4. Intransitive verbs, 32.
5. Clauses introduced by *antequam* and *priusquam*, 154.
6. Conditional sentences, three types, 121-125.

242. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 240 and the constructions of 241. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

BOOK II

NOTE. Sentences in groups A are for those who begin to read Caesar at Book II. Those in groups B are for students who have read Book I. The student should not depend on the English-Latin vocabulary for the Latin words. The Latin text upon which each exercise is based should always be consulted for the proper words or phrases.

43

CHAPTER I

a. certior fiēbat.

b. inter sē dare.

c. exercitum hiemāre molestē
ferēbant.

a. he was informed.

b. were exchanging, were giving
to one another.

c. they were annoyed that an
army should winter.

A. 1. We are informed; he will inform Caesar; I have informed them.

2. We exchange; you exchange.

3. They feared that Gaul would be subdued.

4. I am annoyed that you are conspiring against me.

5. Some desire a revolution.

6. I am informed that they are leading an army against us.

B. 1. They informed him that we were exchanging hostages.

2. I am afraid that they will pass the winter in Gaul.

3. We are grieved that Caesar was not informed that they were conspiring.

4. Those who can hire men will generally usurp royal power.

244

CHAPTER II

<i>a.</i> quī dēdūceret Q. Pedium mīsīt.	<i>a.</i> he sent Quintus Pedius to lead.
<i>b.</i> dat negōtium Senonibus utī cōgnōscant.	<i>b.</i> he employs the Senones to find out.

- A.** 1. I will enroll troops among the Gauls.
2. I sent them to find out about this.
3. We employēd him to inform us.
4. They announced that Caesar was coming to the army.
5. We ought not to hesitate.¹

- B.** 1. We will send an officer to enroll two legions.
2. We gave it in charge² of Pedius to gather an army together.
3. He was informed that they had broken³ camp and were setting out toward the Belgae.

245

CHAPTER III

<i>a.</i> sē suaque omnia.	<i>a.</i> themselves and all their pos- sessions.
<i>b.</i> nē Suessiōnēs quidem.	<i>b.</i> not even the Suessiones. (Note order of Latin words.)
<i>c.</i> dēterrēre quīn cum hīs cōn- sentirent.	<i>c.</i> to prevent from conspiring with these.

- A.** 1. Myself and all my property; ourselves and all our possessions.
2. The Germans who live in Gaul enjoy their own laws.

¹ See III.

² "gave . . . charge of"; does this mean same as "employed"?

³ Use participle.

3. He said that¹ the Germans who lived in Gaul enjoyed their own laws.

4. He is not ready to give even hostages.

5. We will prevent them from aiding you.

B. 1. We who have given you all our property will not conspire against you.

2. Write 1 indirectly after *dīxērunt*.

3. We have prevented them from enjoying even their own laws.

4. Caesar came so quickly that the Remi said they would help him.

246.

CHAPTER IV

<i>a.</i> quī Cimbrōs ingredi prohibuerint.		<i>a.</i> who kept the Cimbri from entering.
<i>b.</i> sibi sūmerent.		<i>b.</i> they were assuming.
<i>c.</i> plūrimum valēre.		<i>c.</i> were the most powerful.

✱ **A.** 1. What can you do in war?

2. I will ask him what you can do in war.

3. We will keep them from settling there.

4. I have found out that they have entered our territory.

5. You are assuming great authority.

6. How large a number has each one promised?

7. They are the most powerful, because they have many soldiers.

8. Quote 7 indirectly after *dīxit*.

9. The chief command of the whole war will be conferred upon Galba.

10. The Nervii were regarded as extremely cruel.

B. 1. I will ask him who are descended from the Germans.

¹ Review 165-169.

2. We are the only ones who¹ have expelled the Gauls.
3. They will prevent us from assuming great authority.
4. They are the most powerful, because they can furnish a hundred thousand men.
5. Quote 4 indirectly after *dixit*.
6. I have found out that the Nervii were considered extremely cruel.

247

CHAPTER V

<i>a.</i> nē cōnfligendum sit. <i>b.</i> commeātūs ut portārī pos- sent efficiēbat. <i>c.</i> in altitūdinem pedum XII vāllō.	<i>a.</i> lest they should have to contend. <i>b.</i> made it possible for sup- plies to be brought. <i>c.</i> by a wall twelve feet high.
---	--

- ⊗ **A.**
1. It concerns us.
 2. We shall be compelled² to fight with the enemy.
 3. We learned that Caesar had pitched his camp.
 4. I will make it possible for you to go.
 5. This ditch will be six feet deep.
 6. Caesar ordered³ them to bring supplies.
- B.**
1. It concerned us that they keep the enemy apart.
 2. If you do this, we shall have to fight.
 3. He learned that troops had been sent and were being led across the river.
 4. The river makes it possible for me to be safe.
 5. The bridge will be one hundred feet long.
 6. We shall order³ them to hurry.

¹ Is this a simple relative clause?

² "we . . . fight," see III. 95.

³ What construction would follow *imperō*? See 147.

248

CHAPTER VI

<i>a.</i> mūrus dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est.	<i>a.</i> the wall was stripped of its defenders.
<i>b.</i> testūdine factā mūrum subruunt.	<i>b.</i> by forming a testudo they undermine the wall.
<i>c.</i> in mūrō cōsistendī potestās erat nullī.	<i>c.</i> nobody could keep a foothold on the wall.

- # A. 1. The town is two miles from the river.
 2. We have cleared the town of soldiers.
 3. This was done by hurling stones.
 4. We cannot keep a foothold on the wall.
 5. They said that Iccius was in command of the town.

- B. 1. A town named Bibrax was attacked by the Belgae on their march.
 2. We began to clear the town of soldiers.
 3. By hurling many javelins they put an end to¹ the attack.
 4. Nobody could² hurl stones against the wall.
 5. Iccius says that the town will be taken, unless Caesar sends him help.

249

CHAPTER VII

<i>a.</i> funditōrēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit.	<i>a.</i> he sends the slingers to aid the townsmen.
<i>b.</i> apud oppidum morātī, omnibus vicīs incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris contendērunt.	<i>b.</i> after lingering about the town, and after all the villages had been burned, they hastened to Caesar's camp. (Note change in use of the participle.)

¹ "put an end to" = make an end of.

² Do not use *possum*.

- A.** 1. I will send men to help you.
 2. For the same reason we employed the slingers.
 3. After pitching¹ camp, they lingered in the town.
 4. Many buildings were burned.

B. 1. Caesar used the messengers as guides and sent soldiers to help them.

2. After gaining possession² of the town and pitching¹ his camp, he waited for them a little while.
 3. They were more than three miles off.

250

CHAPTER VIII

<i>a.</i> tantum . . . quantum.	<i>a.</i> as much . . . as.
<i>b.</i> quod tantum multitudīne poterant.	<i>b.</i> because they were so strong in numbers.
<i>c.</i> suās cōpiās ēductās instrūxērunt.	<i>c.</i> they led their forces out and drew them up:

- A.** 1. Our men have a high reputation for valor.
 2. The place was suitable for³ pitching a camp.
 3. The hill extends as far as we can see.
 4. He did this so as not to be surrounded.
 5. We are very strong in numbers.
 6. I will lead⁴ out and draw up my troops.

B. 1. He perceived that the place was suitable for³ pitching camp.

2. That hill covers as much ground as an army can occupy.
 3. They are so strong in numbers that they can surround us as we fight.
 4. After digging a ditch, he stationed war engines.

¹ See 89, 1.² See 85, 2.³ Do not use the dative.⁴ Avoid using two coördinate verbs.

5. We will lead¹ the legion out of the town and draw it up.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I-VIII

251. Review thoroughly the meaning of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of verbs, and the declension of nouns and adjectives.

- | | |
|--|----------------------|
| 1. studeō. | 26. certus, compare. |
| - 2. cōgnōscō. | 27. rēgnum. |
| 3. dubitō. | 28. negōtium. |
| 4. dēterreō. | 29. obses. |
| - 5. prohibeō. | 30. celeritās. |
| 6. iuvō. | 31. celeriter. |
| 7. audeō. | 32. plūrimum. |
| 8. valeō. | 33. quantus. |
| - 9. possum. | 34. tantus. |
| - 10. habeor. | 35. māgnitūdō. |
| - 11. quaerō. | 36. commeātus. |
| 12. postulō. | 37. potestās. |
| 13. distineō (note the force
of <i>dis</i>). | 38. imperium. |
| 14. imperō. | 39. paulum. |
| 15. iubeō. | 40. paulō. |
| 16. cōgō. | 41. paulisper. |
| 17. coepī. | 42. paulātīm. |
| 18. incipiō. | 43. idōneus. |
| 19. praeficiō. | 44. uterque. |
| 20. praesum. | 45. quisque. |
| 21. contendō. | 46. medius. |
| 22. cōnficiō. | 47. summus, compare. |
| 23. efficiō. | 48. alter. |
| - 24. obtineō. | 49. plērumque. |
| 25. occupō. | 50. nē . . . quidem. |

¹ Avoid using two coördinate verbs.

252. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Dative of possession, of purpose, and the dative used with adjectives, 34, 35, 37.

2. Ablative of separation. When must a preposition be used? 39.

3. Accusative of extent of space and duration of time, 16.

4. Construction with *quaerō* and *postulō*, 15. 1.

5. Uses of *quod* to introduce relative, causal, and substantive clauses, 173.

6. Substantive clauses after verbs of *doubting*, verbs of *hindering*, and verbs of *fearing*, 135, 136, 150.

253. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 251 and the constructions of 252. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

254

CHAPTER IX

a. sī nostrī trānsirent hostēs
exspectābant.

a. the enemy were waiting to
see if our men would
cross.

b. eō cōnsiliō ut castellum ex-
pūgnārent.

b. with the design of taking
the redoubt.

A. 1. A river was between Caesar's army and the enemy.

2. We are waiting to see if they will cross.

3. Caesar will not begin to cross.

4. They are doing this with the design of capturing the camp.

5. Titurius commands the soldiers.

- B.** 1. We are waiting to see if they will attack us.
 2. If¹ the cavalry battle is favorable to neither party, we will not begin to cross.
 3. The enemy are hastening to the river with the design of finding fords.
 4. Who will be in charge of the redoubt when the enemy cross?

255

CHAPTER X

<p><i>a.</i> primōs circumventōs interfecerunt.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> they surrounded and killed the first.</p>
<p><i>b.</i> constituerunt optimum esse quemque reverti.</p>	<p><i>b.</i> they decided that it was best for each to return.</p>
<p><i>c.</i> his persuaderi ut diutius morarentur non poterat.</p>	<p><i>c.</i> these could not be persuaded to wait any longer.</p>

- A.** 1. A fierce battle is being fought.
 2. We attacked them while² they were crossing.
 3. They will surround³ and kill him.
 4. It is best for each to fight in his own territory.
 5. I can't be persuaded to return home.
 6. We assembled to defend our homes.
- B.** 1. They informed Caesar that a fierce battle was being fought.
 2. They drove them back³ and slew many of the enemy.
 3. It is best for us to use our own grain supplies.
 4. We shall attack the enemy while² they are crossing.
 5. We can't be persuaded to fight in foreign territory.

¹ "if . . . is," do not use *si* and the indicative.

² "while . . . crossing"—express by one word in Latin.

³ See 88.

256

CHAPTER XI

<i>a.</i> fēcērunt ut profectiō vide- rētur.	<i>a.</i> they made their departure seem.
<i>b.</i> primā lūce ; sub occāsum sōlis.	<i>b.</i> at daybreak ; at sunset.
<i>c.</i> exauditō clamōre.	<i>c.</i> on hearing the shout.

- # **A.** 1. Everybody is leaving camp.
2. Their departure made Caesar fear an ambushade.
3. At dawn, the fact was established.
4. Why did they withdraw ?
5. On seeing our men, they fled several miles.
6. At sunset, they will be out of danger.

B. 1. Caesar could not understand why they were hastening home.

2. Their departure would¹ have made any one fear an ambushade.

3. At daybreak, the cavalry attacked the rear.

4. Those in front, on seeing the enemy, were thrown into confusion.

5. At sunset, they had fled as far as they could.

257

CHAPTERS XII AND XIII

<i>a.</i> id paucis dēfendentibus ex- pūgnāre nōn potuit.	<i>a.</i> although there were few de- fenders, he could not cap- ture.
<i>b.</i> quae ad oppūgnandum ūsui erant.	<i>b.</i> what was useful in besieg- ing.
<i>c.</i> celeritāte Rōmānōrum per- mōti.	<i>c.</i> alarmed at the speed of the Romans.
<i>d.</i> māiōrēs nātū.	<i>d.</i> the elders.

¹ " would have made " — See 127, 118.

A. 1. On the next day, the enemy recovered from their alarm.

2. Although the wall was high, he tried to take the town.

3. Sheds are useful in besieging.

4. The Sussions were alarmed at the towers.

5. Caesar received the two sons of Galba as hostages.

6. The elders said they had not fought against Caesar.

7. The women approached the camp with outstretched hands.

8. I will come under your protection.

B. 1. Although he saw the height of the wall, Caesar tried to take the town.

2. Ditches and walls are useful in defending a town.

3. The Gauls were alarmed¹ at these works and sought peace of Caesar.

4. Galba's two sons were received by Caesar as hostages.

5. The elders approached the camp.

6. With hands outspread, the women said they would not resist Caesar.

258

CHAPTER XIV

a. populō Rōmānō bellum in-
tulisse.

b. petere Bellovacōs ut ūtātur.

a. had waged war on the Ro-
man people.

b. that the Bellovaci begged
him to use.

A. 1. How great a war did you wage on the enemy?

2. We understand how great a war you waged on them.

3. I begged him to do this.

4. He says that those who did¹ this are fleeing to Britain.

¹ See 88.

B. 1. We understand who have brought war on the Romans.

2. If you do this, I will beg Caesar to show his characteristic kindness.

3. Quote 2 indirectly ¹ after *dixit*.

259

CHAPTERS XV AND XVI

(a) <i>nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus.</i>	(a) that traders have no access to them.
(b) <i>nihil vinī.</i>	(b) no wine.
(c) <i>hīs persuāserant utī experirentur.</i>	(c) they had persuaded these to try.

- ✕ **A.** 1. Caesar said he would demand many hostages.
2. We will surrender ourselves and all our property.
3. Caesar had access to the Gauls.
4. The Nervii allow no wine to be brought into their territory.
5. They learned that Caesar had marched many miles.
6. I shall persuade them to wait for me.
7. The enemy are on the other side of the river.

B. 1. Caesar said he would demand hostages and make inquiry about their customs.

2. Will you surrender yourself and all your property?
3. The Nervii have no wine in their country.
4. They learned that Caesar had marched many miles.
5. I shall persuade him to wait for me on the other side of the river.

¹ Review carefully 165-169.

260

CHAPTER XVII

<p><i>a.</i> explorātōrēs praemittit quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant.</p> <p><i>b.</i> quicquam negōtī.</p> <p><i>c.</i> nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nervii existimāvērunt.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> he sends ahead scouts to choose a place suitable for a camp.</p> <p><i>b.</i> any trouble.</p> <p><i>c.</i> the Nervii thought they ought not to disregard the advice.</p>
--	---

#

- A.** 1. He sent ahead men to do this.
2. They observed our army's usual manner of marching.
3. There will not be any trouble in routing¹ the first legion.
4. Our strength is in cavalry forces.
5. They bent the trees to furnish² a fortification.
6. I think that the Nervii ought not to disregard this advice.
7. We can't even look through the hedge.

- B.** 1. They sent men to observe our manner of march.
2. If the first legion is routed, there will not be any trouble in plundering¹ the baggage.
3. Our strength was in cavalry forces.
4. The hedge furnishes a defense which³ cannot be entered.
5. Do you think that the Nervii ought to disregard this advice?

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS IX–XVII

261. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of verbs, and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

¹ Use infinitive.² "to furnish," cf. praedandi causā.³ See 174.

1. cōnor.	26. dēligō.
2. exspectō.	27. omittō.
3. cōnsistō.	28. cōnsuētūdō.
4. cōstituō.	29. impediō.
5. expūgnō.	30. impedimentum.
6. oppūgnō.	31. appropinquō.
7. interficiō.	32. complūrēs.
8. intereō.	33. usus.
9. persuādeō.	34. cōnsilium.
10. moror.	35. secundus.
11. morior.	36. aliēnus.
12. dēficiō.	37. inīquus.
13. dēsum.	38. rēs frūmentāria.
14. intellegō.	39. proficīscor.
15. properō.	40. profectiō.
16. mātūrō.	41. clāmor.
17. dēsistō.	42. insidiae.
18. sē recipere.	43. agmen.
19. pandō.	44. novus.
20. accēdō.	45. paucī.
21. inferō.	46. aditus.
22. experior.	47. nihil.
23. dēdō.	48. quisquam.
24. dēditiō.	49. ineō.
25. dēditīcius.	50. initium.

262. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Genitive of the whole, 23.
2. Passive periphrastic, 95.
3. Construction with *persuādeō*, 147.
4. Indirect questions, 134.
5. Sequence of tenses, 131-133.
6. Consecutive clauses dependent on *faciō*, *efficiō*, etc.

263. The instructor should form original English sentences, employing the words of 261 and the constructions of 262. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

264 CHAPTERS XVIII AND XIX

<p><i>a.</i> flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.</p> <p><i>b.</i> ratiō aliter sē habēbat ac Belgae ad Nervios dētulerant.</p> <p><i>c.</i> ut aciem cōstituerant.</p> <p><i>d.</i> impetum in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> the depth of the river was about three feet.</p> <p><i>b.</i> the arrangement was different from what the Belgae had reported to the Nervii.</p> <p><i>c.</i> just as they had drawn up the line of battle.</p> <p><i>d.</i> they made an attack on our cavalry.</p>
---	---

- A. 1. The river Sambre has been mentioned above.
2. One cannot see¹ into the woods.
3. The height of the hill was about two hundred feet.
4. The plan of march is different from what the enemy thought.
5. Two legions will guard the rear.
6. We will not retreat into the woods.
7. They attacked us as we were retreating.
8. He will do just as he has agreed.
9. After the camp had been fortified, we saw the enemy.
10. The cavalry was easily routed and thrown into confusion.

B. 1. The foot of the hill is cleared of woods, so that the enemy cannot hide.

¹ "one cannot see" = it cannot be seen.

2. The hill that had been chosen for a camp was about two hundred feet high.

3. Caesar's custom is different from what has been reported.

4. They didn't dare to attack the Romans as they retreated.

5. How far will they follow us?

6. We will do just as we have agreed.

7. When the cavalry had been routed, they made for Caesar's camp.

265

CHAPTER XX

a. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda.

b. cum ad arma concurrī oportēret.

c. quod singulis legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere vetuerat.

a. Caesar had to do everything at once.

b. when they must rush to arms.

c. because Caesar had forbidden the lieutenants to leave their respective legions.

A. 1. You must¹ do this quickly.

2. Others show us what we ought¹ to do.

3. Caesar will forbid the lieutenants to give the signal to their respective legions.

4. The experience of the soldiers helped them.

5. We will execute by ourselves what seems best.

B. 1. When the signal is given the soldiers must¹ run to arms.

2. Others ought¹ not to show us what we have¹ to do.

3. Caesar had ordered the lieutenants to draw up their respective legions.

¹ Review carefully III, 95.

266 CHAPTERS XXI AND XXII

<p><i>a.</i> quam in partem. <i>b.</i> quō tēlum adicī posset. <i>c.</i> aliae aliā in parte.</p>		<p><i>a.</i> in that direction in which. <i>b.</i> a spear's throw. <i>c.</i> some in one place, others in another.</p>
---	--	--

A. 1. He will go in that direction in which he has been ordered.

2. We will urge the soldiers to¹ remember this.

3. He is not more than a stone's throw off.

4. We did not have time to prepare our javelins.

5. You will lose time for² fighting.

6. Some of the soldiers were in one place, others in another.

7. What is needed in each town?

8. The inequality of things was so great that various results of fortune followed.

B. 1. We urged the soldiers to¹ go in that direction in which they had been ordered.

2. Since the enemy are not more than a stone's throw off, you will not have time to encourage the soldiers.

3. They will lose time for² fighting.

4. Some of the soldiers fought in one place, others in another.

5. We can provide what is needed in each town.

267 CHAPTER XXIII

<p><i>a.</i> ā fronte. <i>b.</i> duce Boduōgnātō. <i>c.</i> nōn māgnō ab eā inter- vāllō.</p>		<p><i>a.</i> in front. <i>b.</i> under the leadership of Boduognatus. <i>c.</i> not far from it.</p>
--	--	---

¹ Do not use the infinitive.

² Do not use the dative.

- A. 1. These legions had opposed the Atrebates.
 2. They were killed while trying to cross the river.
 3. The enemy will not hesitate to renew the fight.
 4. The whole camp was exposed in front.
 5. The seventh legion is stationed not far from the twelfth.

6. Under Caesar's leadership the camp was nearly surrounded.

B. 1. Many of the enemy were killed while resisting¹ our men.

2. The enemy renewed the fight² and hurled² their weapons.

3. The camp was exposed in front, because two legions were stationed not far from the right wing.

4. Under Caesar's leadership we shall not hesitate to engage with the Gauls.

268

CHAPTER XXIV

a. adversis hostibus occurrēbant.

b. cālōnēs praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant.

c. aliū aliam in partem ferēbantur.

a. they met the enemy face to face.

b. the camp followers took to flight in utter confusion.

c. some rushed in one direction, others in another.

A. 1. I said that the infantry were routed by the enemy.

2. I met him face to face.

3. We took to flight in great confusion.

4. Some were alarmed by one³ thing, others by another.

5. The camp was filling up with the enemy.

¹ See 87.

² Do not use coördinate verbs.

³ See 73.

6. The soldiers were nearly surrounded and held fast.
 7. It was reported that the Nervii had captured our camp.

- B.** 1. When we retreated, we met him face to face.
 2. I took to flight in great confusion.
 3. Some were alarmed by one¹ thing, others by another.
 4. It is said that the cavalry had been sent to Caesar as help.
 5. The Nervii scattered our men and almost took the camp.

269

CHAPTER XXV

<p><i>a.</i> ubi milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimentum vidit.</p> <p><i>b.</i> signa inferre.</p> <p><i>c.</i> cum quisque operam navare cuperet.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> when he saw that the soldiers hindered one another in fighting.</p> <p><i>b.</i> to charge.</p> <p><i>c.</i> since each one wished to do his best.</p>
--	---

- A.** 1. We hinder one another in fighting.
 2. Publius Sextius Baculus was exhausted by many severe wounds.
 3. There is no reserve that² can be brought up.
 4. Although³ many had been killed, Caesar did not abandon the contest.
 5. He snatched a shield from a soldier.⁴
 6. We will charge, so as to open up the ranks.
 7. Each man will do his best.

- B.** 1. Owing to the crowded condition of the soldiers, we hindered one another in fighting.

¹ See 73.² See 174.³ See 87, 89.⁴ Cf. militi in the text.

2. Although¹ many are exhausted by wounds, Caesar will not abandon the contest.

3. There is no reserve that² can be brought up.

4. We will charge so that the soldiers may use their swords more easily.

5. Each man will do his best, so as to infuse hope in the general.

270

CHAPTER XXVI

a. tribūnōs monuit ut conversa signa in hostīs inferrent.

b. cum alius aliī subsidium ferret.

c. cum quantō in periculō imperātor versārētur cōgnōvissent.

a. he urged the tribunes to face about and charge the enemy.

b. since they helped one another.

c. when they found out in what danger the general was involved.

A. 1. I urged them to³ take a stand near by.

2. Face about and charge the enemy.

3. They helped one another.

4. I don't fear being seen by the enemy.

5. Labienus learned what the enemy were doing.

6. He learned that the commander was involved in danger.

B. 1. We will urge them to³ help one another.

2. Don't⁴ be afraid, face about and charge the Nervii.

3. The soldiers fear being hard pressed by the enemy.

4. Labienus could see what danger the camp was in.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XVIII-XXVI

271. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of verbs, and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

¹ See 87, 89.

² See 174.

³ Review 147.

⁴ See 116.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. pellō. | 26. prōvideō. |
| 2. compellō. | 27. convertō. |
| 3. compleō. | 28. aliter. |
| 4. nāscor. | 29. ordō. |
| 5. subsequo _{ur} . | 30. ratiō. |
| 6. dēferō. | 31. dēclivīs. |
| 7. discēdō. | 32. acclivitās. |
| 8. accēdō. | 33. pars. |
| 9. arcessō. | 34. pār. |
| 10. praescribō. | 35. apertus. |
| 11. doceō. | 36. alius. |
| 12. vetō. | 37. alter. |
| 13. administrō. | 38. altus. |
| 14. concurrō. | 39. opera. |
| 15. occurrō. | 40. opus. |
| 16. obveniō. | 41. opus, eris. |
| 17. adiciō. | 42. ōps. |
| 18. cohortor. | 43. paene. |
| 19. redintegrō. | 44. ferē. |
| 20. mandō. | 45. collis. |
| 21. dēserō. | 46. adversus. |
| 22. versor. | 47. subsidium. |
| 23. intermittō. | 48. cōnfertus. |
| 24. committō. | 49. cōspectus. |
| 25. āmittō. | 50. rūsus. |

272. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Genitive of quality to denote measure, 22.
2. Dative of agent with passive periphrastic verbs, 95.
3. Passive periphrastic, *oportet*, *dēbeō*, 95, 111.
4. Cases of the gerund, 91.
5. Clauses after verbs of *urging*, *ordering*, *requesting*, 147.
6. Moods with *ubi*, *ut*, *postquam*, etc., 152.

273. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 271 and the constructions of 272. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

274

CHAPTER XXVII

<i>a.</i> ut proximī iacentibus īnsis- terent.	<i>a.</i> that the next stood upon them as they lay fallen.
<i>b.</i> ut iūdicārī dēbēret.	<i>b.</i> that one must decide.

A. 1. Those who were exhausted with wounds leaned on their shields.

2. Let¹ us put ourselves ahead of the cavalry.

3. He stood upon his friend as he lay fallen.

4. They showed such valor that they dared to do very difficult deeds.²

5. One must decide that the Nervii were very brave.

B. 1. They leaned on their shields to fight men who were armed.

2. The Nervii are so brave that they fight as they lie exhausted with wounds.

3. One must decide that the Gauls dare to do very difficult deeds.²

275

CHAPTER XXVIII

<i>a.</i> quī arma ferre possent.	<i>a.</i> capable of bearing arms.
<i>b.</i> finitimīs imperāvit ut . . . prohibērent.	<i>b.</i> he ordered their neighbors to refrain.

A. 1. The elders think that the vanquished are not safe.

2. There are not many capable³ of bearing arms.

¹ See 115.² Omit.³ Review 174.

3. Caesar ordered¹ the Nervii to be protected very carefully.

4. He ordered² the vanquished to use their own towns.

B. 1. There were not many elders capable³ of bearing arms.

2. Caesar ordered² the ambassadors to surrender to him.

3. In order to seem to exercise mercy, Caesar orders¹ their neighbors to spare the Nervii.

276

CHAPTER XXIX

a. cum auxiliō Nervii venī-
rent.

b. cum aliās bellum īferrent
aliās inlātum dēfenderent.

a. while they were on their way
to help the Nervii.

b. when at one time they made
war, at another defended
themselves when attacked.

A. 1. While we were on our way to help you, the battle was reported.

2. This town is excellently fortified in every direction.

3. The approach had been fortified with rocks of great weight.

4. The Cimbri had marched into Italy.

5. We will defend ourselves when attacked.

B. 1. While we were on our way to help them, it was reported that a battle had been fought.

2. This town, which is excellently fortified, has a steep approach.

3. By fortifying this wall, they defended themselves when attacked.

¹ Use iubeō.

² Use imperō.

³ Review 174.

<p><i>a.</i> vāllō in circuitū XV mī- lium.</p> <p><i>b.</i> quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō īnstituerē- tur.</p> <p><i>c.</i> trādītis armīs.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> by a wall fifteen miles in circumference.</p> <p><i>b.</i> because so large an engine was being set up so far off. (See 173, 1.)</p> <p><i>c.</i> if their arms were surrendered.</p>
--	--

- A.** 1. The fort was sixty feet in circumference.
 2. The Romans saw that they kept themselves in the town.
 3. A tower was set up a great distance off.
 4. The Gauls laughed because the Romans were so small.
 5. We will surrender ourselves and all our property to you.
 6. Caesar used his customary¹ kindness which the Gauls had heard about.
 7. He says that Caesar will use his customary¹ kindness which the Gauls have heard about.
 8. If we are deprived of our arms, the enemy will kill our children.

- B.** 1. A tower fifty feet in circumference was set up a great distance off.
 2. The Gauls laughed because the Romans expected to move this tower.
 3. If the Romans can move such an engine, they have divine help.
 4. Quote 3, indirectly after **Gallī putābant**.
 5. We beg for one favor; do not deprive us of our arms.
 6. If our arms are surrendered, what tortures shall we not suffer?

¹ Suus.

278

CHAPTER XXXII

<i>a.</i> finitimis imperātūrum nē quam iniūriam inferrent.		<i>a.</i> that he would order their neighbors not to inflict any injury. (See 72.)
--	--	--

A. 1. If you will not inflict any injury on us, we will surrender.

2. Quote 1 indirectly after **dixerunt**.

3. They threw so many weapons into the ditch that the piles equaled the top of the wall.

4. If¹ the arms are concealed, they will not enjoy peace.

B. 1. If you will not inflict any injury on us, we will do what you order.

2. Quote 1 indirectly after **dicunt**.

3. Although many arms were concealed, yet they enjoyed peace.

279

CHAPTER XXXIII

<i>a.</i> concursum est.		<i>a.</i> there was a rush, they ran together.
<i>b.</i> capitum numerus relātus est milium quinquāgintā trium.		<i>b.</i> the number of souls was reported to be fifty-three thousand.

A. 1. Let the townsmen receive no injury from our men.

2. The Gauls believed Caesar would withdraw the garrisons.

3. Had they formed this plan before?

4. There was a rush to fight the enemy.

¹ Avoid the use of *sī*.

5. Although there were no defenders, the gates were broken down.

6. The number of those who were killed was said to be four thousand.

B. 1. Caesar orders the soldiers not to inflict any injury on the Gauls.

2. If this plan was entered upon before, ought¹ the townsmen to have been sold?

3. There was a rush on the part of² the Romans to fight the enemy.

4. The number of those who were killed was said to be four thousand.

280 CHAPTERS XXXIV AND XXXV

<i>a.</i> utī lēgātī mitterentur quī pollicērentur.		<i>a.</i> that ambassadors were sent to promise.
---	--	--

A. 1. Crassus informed Caesar that the states along the coast³ had been pacified.

2. He sent officers to lead the legions into winter quarters.

3. Such a thanksgiving had never been voted up to this time.

4. They promised⁴ to return to Caesar.

5. We will do what he orders.

B. 1. Crassus informed Caesar that the states which bordered the ocean had been pacified.

2. He sends officers to lead the legions among the states where the war had been waged.

3. Such a thanksgiving had never been voted up to this time in honor of any one.

¹ Review 112.

² "on the part of"—what does this mean?

³ "along the coast"—use one word. ⁴ "to return"—acc. and fut. infinitive.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XXVII-XXXV

281. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives :

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. instituō. | 26. cōnsilium inire. |
| 2. insistō. | 27. inermis. |
| 3. indicō. | 28. nēquiquam. |
| 4. iaceō. | 29. vulnus. |
| 5. iaciō. | 30. extrēmus. |
| 6. cōficiō. | 31. iniūria. |
| 7. dēleō. | 32. cōsēsus. |
| 8. ascendō. | 33. cōsentiō. |
| 9. agō. | 34. iter. |
| 10. redigō. | 35. pondus. |
| 11. praestō, intrans.
and trans. | 36. saxum. |
| 12. audeō. | 37. mānsuētūdō. |
| 13. dēfendō. | 38. clēmētia. |
| 14. respondeō. | 39. quis, inter. and
indef. |
| 15. trādō. | 40. condiciō. |
| 16. contineō. | 41. exiguitās. |
| 17. invideō. | 42. exiguus. |
| 18. cōsuēscō. | 43. ēruptiō. |
| 19. cōfidō. | 44. supplicātiō. |
| 20. attingō. | 45. supplicium. |
| 21. adaequō. | 46. pellis. |
| 22. cēlō. | 47. vis. |
| 23. cadō. | 48. praesertim. |
| 24. accidō. | 49. sicut. |
| 25. occidō. | 50. noctū. |

282. Review the following principles of syntax:

1. Genitive and ablative of quality, 22, 49.
2. Dative with verbs meaning *command*, *obey*, etc., 32.
3. Verbs used impersonally.
4. Constructions with *iubeō* and *imperō*, 147, 148.
5. Principal statements and subordinate clauses in indirect discourse, 160, 166.
6. Uses of *suus*, *sē*, *sibi*, and *ipse*, 65, 69, 74.
7. Relative clauses of result and characteristic, 145. 1, 174.

283. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 281 and the constructions of 282. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

BOOK III

284

CHAPTER I

1. What reason had¹ Caesar for opening up a road through the Alps?
2. I will permit you, if you think there is need, to² winter in this place.
3. Galba was permitted³ to² go among the Alps.
4. There were two parts in the village of Octodurus; one⁴ the soldiers occupied, the other Galba fortified.

285

CHAPTER II

1. The Gauls who had left the village occupied the mountains.
2. They informed Galba that the Gauls who⁵ had left the village were occupying the mountains.
3. Will the Romans be able to sustain the Gauls' attack, if⁶ many of the soldiers are withdrawn?
4. We are persuaded that the Romans have taken the children away from the Gauls.

¹ See 34.

² Do not use the infinitive.

³ See 32, 2.

⁴ See 73.

⁵ "who . . . village"—is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse ever in the indicative?

⁶ Express the condition in some other way than by using *sī*.

286

CHAPTER III

1. Sufficient provision for supplies had not been made.
2. Can supplies be brought up when the roads are blocked?
3. Some said, "Let¹ us go back by the same roads by which we came."
4. The majority, however, did not decide to hasten to a place² of safety.

287

CHAPTERS IV AND V

1. The signal was given, and the enemy hurled stones on the camp.
2. The Romans will aid that³ part which is deprived of defenders.
3. Not only not the weary, but not even the wounded, retreated.
4. On⁴ account of the failing strength of our men, the situation was critical.
5. He said to Galba, "If we make a sally, there is one hope of safety."
6. Therefore Galba said, "Stop the fight and refresh yourselves."
7. Tell the soldiers to⁵ rush out of camp.

288

CHAPTER VI

1. You leave us no⁶ opportunity either of learning what is going on or of collecting our wits.

¹ See 115.² "a place of"—omit.³ "that part which"—study the text—*quaecumque pars . . . eō*.⁴ "on . . . men," express by a clause.⁵ See 147, 148.⁶ Combine the negative with "either" and "or."

2. We entertained the hope of surrounding the enemy.
3. Galba came into the Alps with one purpose, but met a different situation.¹
4. Since the enemy had been defeated, Galba returned to the province.

289

CHAPTERS VII AND VIII

1. Caesar² had every reason to believe that he could start for Illyricum.
2. The cause of the sudden war that broke out near the ocean was as follows:
3. The Veneti kept Caesar's ambassadors with the purpose of getting back their own hostages.
4. All who are in the habit of using the harbors are tributaries of the Veneti.
5. In many respects the Veneti surpassed the Romans.
6. We had rather³ recover our hostages than put up with the slavery of the Romans.
7. They said to Crassus that they would send back the ambassadors, if he would give up their hostages.

290

CHAPTER IX

1. Crassus informed Caesar of all these matters.
2. After many war vessels had been built, Caesar himself came just as soon as possible.
3. We see what a crime we have been guilty of.
4. Since you have thrown ambassadors into chains, get ready for war.

¹ Use *rēs*.² Cf. text—*cum omnibus . . . existimāret*.³ "we had rather" = we prefer.

5. We are confident that nothing will happen contrary to expectation.

6. The Veneti think they know the shallows in those places where they will carry on¹ war.

7. Let us get together as much grain as possible.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I-IX

201. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, memorizing principal parts of verbs and declension of nouns and adjectives :

1. <i>pertineō.</i>	21. <i>instō.</i>
2. <i>volō.</i>	22. <i>cōnstō.</i>
3. <i>mālō.</i>	23. <i>colligō.</i>
4. <i>nōlō.</i>	24. <i>reficiō.</i>
5. <i>permittō.</i>	25. <i>potior.</i>
6. <i>patior.</i>	26. <i>occurrō.</i>
7. <i>concēdō.</i>	27. <i>adeō.</i>
8. <i>premō.</i>	28. <i>coōrior.</i>
9. <i>dētrahō.</i>	29. <i>secundus.</i>
10. <i>abstrahō.</i>	30. <i>castellum.</i>
11. <i>sustineō.</i>	31. <i>undique.</i>
12. <i>doleō.</i>	32. <i>ubique.</i>
13. <i>persuādeō.</i>	33. <i>vallis.</i>
14. <i>interclūdō.</i>	34. <i>vāllum.</i>
15. <i>placeō.</i>	35. <i>aliquot.</i>
16. <i>attribuō.</i>	36. <i>cōnsilium capere.</i>
17. <i>antecēdō</i> , with the acc.	37. <i>singillātim.</i>
18. <i>discēdō.</i>	38. <i>frūstrā.</i>
19. <i>excēdō.</i>	39. <i>paucitās.</i>
20. <i>succēdō.</i>	40. <i>satis.</i>

¹ See 94, 134.

41. hiems.	46. portus.
42. cōncilium.	47. dēfectiō.
43. cōnsilium.	48. dēficiō.
44. sententia.	49. integer.
45. opīniō.	50. incolumis.

292. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Ablative with *utor*, *potior*, etc., 44.
2. The gerundive construction with these verbs.
3. Object clauses with verbs of feeling. Substantive clauses introduced by *quod*.
4. Intransitive verbs used in the passive, 32. 2.
5. *Causā* with genitive of gerund and gerundive, 91, 93, 142. 1, 2.
6. Conditional clauses ; simple supposition of fact, and supposition of something contrary to fact, 121-123.

293. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 291 and the constructions of 292. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

294

CHAPTERS X AND XI

1. Although there were many difficulties, yet Caesar thought he ought to wage war.
2. If this revolt is overlooked, the Morini will think they may¹ do the same thing.
3. All men ought² to hate slavery.
4. He instructed Labienus to go with the cavalry.

¹ Review carefully 117, 119.

² See 111.

5. Caesar sent Crassus to keep the enemy from¹ uniting.

6. He took care² that aid should not be sent from Aquitania.

295

CHAPTER XII

1. The towns were so situated that there was no access either on foot or by ships.

2. Caesar, therefore, shut off the sea by dikes which³ he made equal to the walls of the town.

3. They can remove their goods on account of their abundance of ships.

4. The tide ebbs twice every twenty-four hours.

296

CHAPTER XIII

1. The ships of the Veneti are flat-bottomed, so as more easily to encounter the shoals.

2. Since they were made wholly of oak they could endure any violence.

3. They thought that linen sails would not withstand such severe gales of wind.

4. Their ships can't be harmed with the ram.

5. They were of such great height that weapons could not easily be thrown to them.

6. Our ships had to fear the rocks and shoals.

297

CHAPTER XIV

1. Caesar decided that he ought not to spend so much labor in vain.

2. It is not clear to me what plan of battle to adopt.

¹ See 150.

² Cf. in the text — *quī eam . . . cūret.*

³ See 174.

3. The enemy cannot be injured with the towers on account of the height of their ships.

4. The poles that were prepared by our men were very useful.

5. Our soldiers surpass the Veneti in valor.

6. No deed of valor escaped notice, because Caesar had a view of the sea.

298

CHAPTERS XV AND XVI

1. The enemy sought safety in flight, when they noticed our men boarding¹ their ships.

2. The calm was so sudden that we could easily finish the business.

3. We will follow up and capture the ships one by one.

4. Let us collect into one place whatever ships we have anywhere.

5. We have no place to retreat² to.

6. Caesar decided that they must be sold into slavery.

299

CHAPTER XVII

1. While Caesar was³ fighting with the Veneti, many states revolted.

2. When the gates are closed, we will unite with them.

3. Every day the enemy offered Sabinus a chance to fight.

4. We will stay in camp, although we are somewhat criticised.

5. Ought Sabinus to fight when Caesar is absent?

¹ Do not use the participle.

² Cf. in text — quō sē recipere.

³ See 102, 2.

300

CHAPTER XVIII

1. He persuaded a certain man to set forth the fear of the Romans.

2. The Gauls did not know when Sabinus would set out from his camp.

3. We ought not to lose an opportunity of going to the camp.

4. We shall not hasten to the camp until¹ we have taken arms.

5. We have collected fagots to fill the ditch with.

301

CHAPTER XIX

1. The Romans rallied and armed themselves in as little time as possible.

2. When the enemy arrived, all out of breath, Sabinus gave his men the signal which they desired.²

3. As a result³ of the bravery of our men, not even one of the enemy escaped.

4. Sabinus informed Caesar of his victory.

5. The Gauls are quick to surrender.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS X-XIX

302. Review thoroughly the meanings of the following words, learning the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

1. **dēsum.**2. **dēficiō.**3. **careō.**4. **praesum.**5. **nōscō.**6. **distribuō.**7. **partior.**8. **pāreō.**¹ See 156.² Cf. in the text — cupientibus signum dat.³ Cf. in the text — factum est . . . ut . . . ferrent.

9. comparō.	30. polliceor.
10. noceō.	31. pollicitātiō.
11. concidō.	32. ferreus.
12. concidō.	33. similis.
13. cōsector.	34. alacer.
14. āmittō.	35. ēiusmodī.
15. admittō.	36. admodum.
16. negligō.	37. clam.
17. licet.	38. facinus.
18. studeō.	39. officium.
19. ōdī (see 106).	40. imprimis.
20. mandō.	41. onus.
21. cūrō.	42. servitūs.
22. trādō.	43. quemadmodum.
23. nāvigātiō.	44. quīdam.
24. classis.	45. quidem.
25. facultās.	46. lateō.
26. opportūnitās.	47. perferō.
27. occāsīō.	48. adaequō.
28. tempestās.	49. sūmō.
29. fūnis.	50. contumēlia.

303. Review the following principles of syntāx :

1. Dative with compounds of *sum*, 33.
2. Predicate genitive. (Consult grammar.)
3. Placē *where, whence, whither*. (Consult grammar.)
4. Gerundive with *cūrō, trādō*, etc. (Consult grammar.)
5. Constructions with *priusquam* and with *postquam*, 152, 154.
6. Concessive clauses, 171.

304. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 302 and the constructions

of 303. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

305

CHAPTER XX

1. I see that we must fight in the same place where a Roman army has been defeated.
2. A few years ago Manlius lost his baggage, because¹ he did not use ordinary diligence.
3. The Romans were not very strong in cavalry.
4. Place your infantry in the valley in ambush.

306

CHAPTER XXI

1. Let us rely on our bravery, and not turn and flee.
2. What can you do when² you have no general?
3. We perceived that the Aquitanians were skillful³ in working mines.
4. They asked Caesar to do this.

307

CHAPTER XXII

1. We shall enjoy life along with those to whose friendship we have pledged ourselves.
2. If anything happens to you, we shall commit suicide.
3. There is no one who will refuse to die, if⁴ his friend is killed.
4. Although⁵ he was repulsed, yet he fought bravely.

¹ See 89, 173.

² "when . . . no" = without.

³ See 24.

⁴ Do not use *si*.

⁵ See 87.

308

CHAPTER XXIII

1. The town was taken a few days after¹ we arrived.
2. Let us ask for help and exchange hostages.
3. Do not think that they have not great skill in Roman customs.
4. We ought not to hesitate² to cut the enemy off from supplies.
5. Do you all entertain the same opinion?

309

CHAPTER XXIV

1. Let us wait to see what plan the enemy will adopt.
2. I think it will not be safe to lead³ out our troops and draw up a double line of battle.
3. We shall attack the Romans while they are retreating.³
4. We must no longer delay encouraging the soldiers.

310

CHAPTER XXV

1. Some hurled weapons, while⁴ others provided stones.
2. We do not put much confidence in you.⁵
3. We announced to Crassus that the enemy were fighting fearlessly.

311

CHAPTER XXVI

1. We urged them to show us what was being done.
2. The horsemen are being led around by a longer route, so that the attention of the enemy may not be fixed on them.⁶

¹ Cf. in text — paucis diēbus quibus. ² See text and note exception to 136, 1.

³ Use the participle.

⁴ Omit.

⁵ See 32.

⁶ Review 65.

3. They demolished the gate before they were seen by the enemy.

4. It is clear that thirty thousand Gauls were killed.

312

CHAPTER XXVIII

1. They are the only ones left whom¹ Caesar has not conquered.

2. I think that Caesar carries on war in a very different manner from the Morini.

3. When we betook ourselves and all our property into the woods, Caesar could not attack us.

4. We lost a few of our men, because² we followed the enemy too far.

313

CHAPTER XXIX

1. Having³ cut down the forest, Caesar piled up the material as a rampart.

2. On account of the rains, the soldiers cannot remain longer in their tents.

3. Caesar will burn their villages and lead his army into winter quarters.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XX-XXIX

314. Review thoroughly the meaning of the following words, learning the principal parts of the verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives :

1. aestimō.
2. existimō.
3. intellegō.
4. adorior.

5. committō.
6. ostendō.
7. cupiō.
8. perspicō.

¹ See 174.² Review 173.³ See 85, 89.

9. cōspiciō.	30. finitimus.
10. obsideō.	31. nōminātim.
11. reperiō.	32. plūrimum valēre, posse.
12. tollō.	33. frētus.
13. impetrō.	34. sine.
14. imperō.	35. adulēscentulus.
15. interclūdō.	36. imber.
16. augeō.	37. mātēria.
17. dēcertō.	38. pecus.
18. arbitror.	39. deinceps.
19. supersum.	40. commodum.
20. dēspērō.	41. cāsus.
21. repellō.	42. causa.
22. dēpellō.	43. adhūc.
23. vetus.	44. quisquam.
24. praemium.	45. quisque.
25. ultrō.	46. tandem.
26. palūs.	47. tamen.
27. item.	48. adsuētus.
28. lātitudō.	49. perītus.
29. multitudō.	50. cōnstō.

315. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Genitive with adjectives, 24.
2. Ablative of respect, 47.
3. Passive periphrastic and future infinitives, 95, 109.
4. Quō in purpose clauses, 143. 2.
5. Supine to express purpose, 96. 1.
6. Conditions referring to future time, 124, 125.

316. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 314 and the constructions of 315. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

BOOK IV

317

CHAPTER I

1. In the consulship of Pompey and Crassus, the Germans came into Gaul on account of their being hard pressed by the Suevi.

2. The Suevi used¹ to lead a thousand armed men from each² of the hundred cantons.

3. The former stay at home, while the latter go out to wage war.

4. No one is allowed³ to own land.

5. Freedom of life makes them men of extraordinary power.

318

CHAPTER II

1. We had no buyers⁴ for what we captured in war.

2. The Germans made their pack horses capable of very great labor.

3. It was considered very disgraceful to use wine.

4. Do not allow yourselves to become weakened.

319

CHAPTER III

1. They say that their neighbors are unable to withstand the violence of the Suevi.

2. Merchants resort to the Ubii often.

3. Although the Ubii are Germans, yet they are more civilized than the Suevi.

¹ See 103.

² Cf. in text — ex quibus . . . singula milia, etc.

³ See 32, 2.

⁴ Cf. in text — quibus vëndant.

320

CHAPTER IV

1. The Usipites wandered about in Germany for many years.
2. Having reached the Rhine, the Menapii prevented them from¹ forcing a passage over the river.
3. Scouts informed the Menapii that the Germans had returned home.
4. At last they came back again and seized many ships.
5. They crossed the Rhine before the Menapii were informed of their arrival.

321

CHAPTER V

1. Caesar fears that the Gauls are desirous of a change of government.
2. The Gauls ask travelers, "From what regions have you come?"
3. You will have to repent of the² schemes you have entered upon.

322

CHAPTER VI

1. The things we³ expected would happen have taken place.
2. They invited us to send ambassadors earlier than usual.
3. I think we ought to wage war with the Germans.

323

CHAPTER VII

1. If provoked, we do not refuse to resist our enemies.
2. Write I indirectly⁴ after *dixērunt*.

¹ See 150.² See 71. 5.³ See 71. 4.⁴ Review carefully 165-169.

3. Resist anybody that makes war on you.
4. Write 3 indirectly¹ after *dicit*.
5. There is nobody that is a match for the immortal gods.

324 CHAPTERS VIII AND IX

1. Caesar says that, if you cannot defend your own territory, you cannot hold that² belonging to others.
2. You may³ ask help of the Ubii.
3. Having reported these things to their people, the ambassadors returned to Caesar.
4. They asked Caesar to wait for their cavalry, so as to cause a delay.

325 CHAPTER X

1. The Meuse approaches the Rhine not more than eighty miles from the ocean.
2. Those who live on the islands subsist on fish and birds' eggs.

326 CHAPTER XI

The Germans did not wish Caesar to advance any farther. Therefore, in order to cause a delay, as Caesar thought, they asked him to give them time to⁴ send ambassadors among the Ubii. Caesar said, "I will remain here for one day; but to-morrow assemble here in as large numbers as possible." He said to the prefects who were in charge of the cavalry, "Do not provoke the enemy to an engagement."

¹ Review carefully 165-169.

³ See 117, 118.

² "that . . . others" — one Latin word.

⁴ Cf. in text — *ad hās rēs cōficiendās*.

327

CHAPTER XII

The enemy, although our cavalry outnumbered them, made an attack quickly on our men while they had no fear. As was their custom, the Germans leaped to their feet and began to stab our horses underneath. A great many of our men were overthrown, and the rest fled until¹ they came to our van. Among the seventy-four of our men that were killed in this fight was Piso, who was thrown from his horse and killed, while¹ he was rescuing his brother from danger.

328

CHAPTER XIII

After Caesar had learned of this battle, thinking that it was the height of folly to wait until the enemy had time to collect their forces, he decided that he ought not to listen to their ambassadors. Therefore, when a crowd² of Germans came to camp on the next morning to excuse themselves for³ having attacked his cavalry, he thought it a very opportune occurrence,⁴ and retained them all. He led all his troops out of camp and decided to give battle.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I-XIII

329. Review the following vocabulary thoroughly, memorizing the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives :

1. *adsuēfaciō.*2. *consuēscō.*3. *dēsiliō.*4. *tueor.*5. *commūnicō.*6. *trānseō.*¹ Dum, see 156.² "a crowd of Germans" = the Germans in crowds.³ "for having" = because they had.⁴ *rēs.*

7. prohibeō.	30. metus.
8. alō.	31. timor.
9. incolō.	32. perfidia.
10. vendō.	33. humilis.
11. fallō.	34. hiems.
12. adhibeō.	35. quotannis.
13. sustineō.	36. cotidiē.
14. revertor.	37. cis.
15. studeō.	38. citrā.
16. serviō.	39. sēdēs.
17. occurrō.	40. cōnsidō.
18. resistō.	41. aliquot.
19. attribuō.	42. pār.
20. concēdō.	43. pars.
21. appropinquō.	44. ōrō.
22. antecēdō.	45. petō.
23. interclūdō.	46. quaerō.
24. obtineō.	47. queror.
25. occupō.	48. cōnsilium { inire.
26. offerō.	capere.
27. vīs.	49. fingō.
28. vestītus.	50. invitō.
29. vestīgium.	

330. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Genitive of possession and genitive of description used in the predicate, 20, 22.

2. Uses of *suus*, *suī*, *sibi*, *sē*, 65, 69.

3. Indirect object used with transitive verbs, with intransitive verbs of special meaning, with compound verbs. How are these verbs used in the passive? 31-33.

4. Indirect statements, commands, questions, 134, 160, 162, 166.

5. Object clauses after verbs of commanding, requesting, urging, etc., 147.

6. Clauses dependent on verbs of swearing and promising.

331. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 329 and the constructions of 330. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

332

CHAPTER XIV

Caesar arrived at the Germans' camp before there was time to seize arms. They were so alarmed at his sudden arrival that they were perplexed as¹ to whether it would be better to fly in all directions or to resist the Romans. Those who could seize arms defended the camp, but the rest fled and were overtaken by Caesar's cavalry.

333

CHAPTER XV

So many of the Germans were being killed that the rest abandoned everything, rushed out of camp, and fled to the Rhine. There some were killed, and others were overpowered by the force of the river. Although Caesar gave to those who had remained in camp the privilege of departing, they wished to remain with him, owing to their fear² of the Gauls.

334

CHAPTER XVI

Caesar wished to cross the Rhine, so that the Germans might fear for their own interests and be induced to³ re-

¹ "as to"—omit.

² Do not use a noun.

³ Do not use the infinitive.

turn home to defend their own territory. Another reason¹ was that the Sugambii would² not surrender to Caesar the horsemen who had crossed the Meuse. They said to Caesar, "It is not fair that you should claim any power or authority across the Rhine." The Ubii also were being hard pressed by the Suevi, and were urging Caesar not to³ be kept from helping them by his state business. They said that even the friendship of Caesar would be very helpful⁴ to them, now that the Germans had been defeated.

335

CHAPTER XVII

Therefore Caesar decided that he must cross the Rhine. Although the Ubii promised to give⁵ him boats, nevertheless he thought he must build a bridge, since it was not quite safe or consistent with his dignity to carry his army over in ships.

336

CHAPTER XVIII

Ten days after he had decided upon the plan, Caesar led his army across the Rhine. He decided that he must leave a strong garrison at the bridge before he hastened among the Sugambri. These,⁶ at the suggestion of their friends, did not send Caesar hostages, but fled into the woods.

337

CHAPTER XIX

While Caesar was⁷ waiting among the Sugambri, he burned all their villages and buildings. He then learned

¹ Cf. in text — *accessit etiam quod.*

³ Do not use the infinitive.

⁵ Use the future infinitive.

⁷ See 102, 2.

² See 117.

⁴ See 37.

⁶ Use the relative pronoun, see 71, 6.

from the Ubii, whom he promised to help, that the Suevi had found out about the bridge and had gathered themselves and all their property into one place; and that they would wait there, if Caesar decided to fight. Caesar had crossed the Rhine to frighten the Germans, to punish the Sugambri, and to free the Ubii from their enemies. Therefore ¹ when he found that these objects had all been accomplished, he decided to retreat into Gaul.

338

CHAPTER XX

Caesar had noticed that the Britons were very useful to the Gauls in war. Therefore, although ² a small part of summer remained, he decided that he ought to find out about the kind of people and about the harbors. And so, when he could not ³ find out from the merchants what sort ⁴ of people they were, or ⁵ how large the harbors were, he decided to set out for Britain in person.⁵

339

CHAPTER XXI

Volusenus was sent forward with a galley, and was commanded to ⁶ make a careful investigation. He came back in five days and reported that he had not dared to disembark. In the meantime, while Caesar was collecting ships among the Morini, ambassadors came to him from the island to promise friendship. He urged them to ⁶ submit to the power of the Romans, and allowed them to ⁶ return home. He ordered Commius, who was very highly ⁷ regarded by them, to return to the island with them and to announce his own coming.

¹ quā rē.² See 171.³ neque.⁴ "What sort of" — quālis?⁵ See 74, I.⁶ See 147.⁷ "was . . . regarded," cf. the text — māgnī habēbātur, and see 29.

340

CHAPTER XXII

The Morini excused themselves for their former deeds on the ground that they were unacquainted with Roman customs. Caesar, therefore, promised to receive them under his protection, and ordered them to give a large number of hostages. He then decided that he ought to start at once with what ships he had, since he feared that the wind in a short time might keep him from¹ sailing.²

341

CHAPTER XXIII

Since the cavalry were boarding their ships too slowly, Caesar started ahead with a few vessels and reached Britain first. When he perceived that the enemy were drawn up on the hills, and could hurl weapons on his men as they disembarked, he decided that he ought to wait until³ the rest of the ships could help him. In the meantime he gathered his officers together, and showed them how⁴ he wished everything carried out.

342

CHAPTER XXIV

When the barbarians learned what Caesar had decided to do, they sent forward their cavalry and charioteers to keep the Romans from disembarking. The Romans, however, were greatly hindered because they had to fight while⁵ standing in deep water, while⁵ the enemy could hurl their weapons from dry land.

¹ Cf. in text — *ventō tenēbantur quō minus . . . possent.*

² *solvō.*

³ See 156.

⁴ *quem ad modum.*

⁵ Which of these two ideas may be expressed by the participle?

343

CHAPTER XXV

Caesar, therefore, in order to dislodge the enemy, stationed the galleys on the exposed flank of the barbarians. They were so alarmed at this maneuver¹ that they halted and began to retreat. The standard bearer² of one of the legions then urged his comrades to jump down into the water, if they did not wish to betray the eagle to the barbarians. Hereupon they all jumped from the ships and did their duty to the commonwealth and to their general.

344

CHAPTER XXVI

When the enemy noticed that our men were jumping one³ from one ship, another from another, and that they could not get a firm footing, they surrounded them one by one, and threw them into great confusion. But as soon as Caesar filled the skiffs with soldiers and sent them to help his men, the enemy fled and the Romans were able to stand on dry land. Caesar could not pursue them on account of the lack⁴ of cavalry.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XIV-XXVI

345. Review the following vocabulary thoroughly, memorizing the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

- | | | |
|--------------------|--|----------------------------------|
| 1. irrupō. | | 4. solvō. |
| 2. immittō. | | 5. agō, several meanings. |
| 3. expōnō. | | 6. praestō. |

¹ rēs.² See 71, 7.³ Cf. in text, alius aliā ex nāvī.⁴ Do not use a noun. Express the whole idea by a clause.

7. opprimō.	29. attingō.
8. pereō.	30. obsidiō.
9. discēdō.	31. litus.
10. distribuō.	32. mōtus.
11. audeō.	33. binī.
12. cōfidō.	34. exiguitās.
13. intersum.	35. exiguus.
14. dēsum.	36. onerārius.
15. praesum.	37. onus.
16. praeficiō.	38. nāvis longa.
17. nītor.	39. insuēfactus.
18. prōdō.	40. imperitus.
19. contendō.	41. idōneus.
20. coepī. How is pass. used?	42. adversus, adj. and adv.
21. rescindō.	43. incolumis.
22. succidō.	44. quisquam.
23. incendō.	45. quisque.
24. perspiciō.	46. opīniō.
25. adeō.	47. sententia.
26. ulcīscor.	48. ratiō.
27. comperiō.	49. nēquāquam.
28. reperiō.	50. latus.

346. Review the following principles of syntax:

1. Dative with compounds of *sum*.
2. Translations of the ablative absolute.
3. Constructions with *cum* as temporal, causal, and concessive conjunction, 153, 171, 173. 2.
4. Constructions with *postquam*, *ubi*, *ut*, etc., 152.
5. Constructions with *priusquam* and *antequam*, 154.
6. Simple conditions referring to present and past time, and conditions referring to future time in indirect discourse, 126, 169.

347. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 345 and the constructions of 346. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

348

CHAPTER XXVII

As soon as the battle was over, the Britons came to seek peace. Caesar complained because they had arrested Commius, whom he had sent to them as an envoy, but, at their request,¹ he said he would pardon their action. When Caesar ordered² them to give hostages, they replied, "We will give part of them at once, but the rest we shall have to summon from distant places."

349

CHAPTER XXVIII

Two days after the battle was fought, the ships that had taken the cavalry on board approached Britain, and, just as³ they were visible from the shore, they were driven back by a storm, some to the place from which they had started and others to the westward. The latter cast anchor, but were filling with water and of necessity made for Gaul.

350

CHAPTER XXIX

Caesar did not know that the full moon causes very high tides, and so he had drawn up the galleys on the beach, and had anchored the transport ships. The next day he found that the former were filled with water, and that the latter were being dashed about by the storm. All the soldiers, therefore, were greatly alarmed, fearing that they could not return to Gaul, unless the ships were repaired.

¹ Use ablative absolute.

² Use imperō.

³ "just as" = when.

351

CHAPTER XXX

When the Britons came to Caesar after the battle, they noticed how contracted the camp was, and perceived the confusion of the Roman army on account of the loss of their ships. They therefore felt confident that, if they should rebel¹ and prolong¹ the matter until winter, they could cut Caesar off from supplies and thus frighten² any one from crossing to Britain again.

352

CHAPTER XXXI

Caesar, suspecting³ from the fact that the Britons were conferring⁴ together that they were about to adopt some new plan, sent some of his men into the fields for grain, and ordered others to repair the ships. The soldiers carried out his plans with such zeal that he was ready for every emergency.

353

CHAPTER XXXII

While the seventh legion was foraging, with⁵ no suspicion of an attack, it was reported to Caesar that those who were on guard had seen a cloud⁶ of dust in that direction where the legion had proceeded. Suspecting that the enemy were attacking his men, he left a guard at the camp and went at once to help his soldiers. He found the Romans in confusion, because they had been surrounded while engaged in reaping the grain.

¹ Use ablative absolute.

² *dēterreō*.

³ What tense of the participle? See 84.

⁴ "conferring together," cf. *inter sē conlocūtī*, Chapter 30.

⁵ "with . . . attack" — use ablative absolute.

⁶ Express this idea by an adjective.

354

CHAPTER XXXIII

Caesar saw how the Britons fought from their chariots. They would¹ ride about in all directions and try to frighten the enemy. Then they would station the chariots a little distance from the battle and fight on foot, so that they might retreat to them easily, should there be any need. They accomplished so much by their daily practice that they displayed in battle the speed of cavalry and the steadiness of infantry.

355

CHAPTER XXXIV

Although the Romans recovered from fear at the arrival of help, yet Caesar thought he ought to lead his men back to camp without² any loss of time. Meanwhile the storms that followed kept the enemy from attacking Caesar. But, after sending messengers in every direction to tell their people how few soldiers the Romans had, the Britons gathered a large number of troops to attack Caesar's camp.

356 CHAPTERS XXXV AND XXXVI

When Caesar had obtained a few horsemen with which to pursue the enemy, he decided that it was best to draw up a line of battle. Just³ as Caesar expected, the Britons soon fled, and many of them were killed by the horsemen. At the conclusion of the battle, the Britons sent ambassadors to Caesar to say that they would do whatever he ordered. When the weather was favorable, he set sail and arrived at Gaul safely in a short time.

¹ See 103, 1.

² "without . . . time" — use the ablative absolute.

³ "Just as . . . expected" = as Caesar thought it would be.

357

CHAPTER XXXVII

Caesar thought that the Morini were subdued, but they attacked about three hundred of his soldiers while they were hurrying into camp, and ordered them to lay down their arms. The Romans refused¹ to do this, and defended themselves for several hours until Caesar sent all the cavalry to help them. Then the Morini fled.

358

CHAPTER XXXVIII

Caesar sent Labienus to bring the Morini under his power. He did this² very easily, because the Morini had no place to³ use as a refuge. After Titurius and Cotta had laid waste the fields of the Menapii, Caesar led his legions back into winter quarters.

REVIEW OF CHAPTERS XXVII-XXXVIII

359. Review thoroughly the following vocabulary, memorizing the principal parts of verbs and the declension of nouns and adjectives:

1. adfligō.	9. accidō.
2. ēgredior.	10. occidō.
3. dēferō.	11. dēligō.
4. comprehendō.	12. conloquor.
5. ignōscō.	13. prohibeō.
6. tollō.	14. āmittō.
7. coōrior.	15. ventitō.
8. compleō.	16. laccessō.

¹ "refused to do" = they denied that they would do.

² Use the relative. What position must it have?

³ See 174.

17. nancīscor.	34. commodē.
18. nāscor.	35. cōnfertus.
19. cōnsistō.	36. genus.
20. cōstituō.	37. aliēnus.
21. subiciō.	38. tempestās.
22. animadvertō.	39. etsi.
23. complūrēs.	40. tergum.
24. aes.	41. continēns.
25. praeda.	42. nōlō.
26. pedītātus.	43. vulnus.
27. orbis.	44. cōnspectus.
28. infrā.	45. rebellīō.
29. cōnfestim.	46. ferē.
30. lēnis.	47. abdō.
31. unde.	48. praeceps.
32. inde.	49. plērumque.
33. clam.	50. ēripiō.

360. Review the following principles of syntax :

1. Place *where, whence, whither*.
2. Time *when, within which, during which*, 51, 16.
3. Dative of service ; translations of an appositive, 36. 3.
4. Ways of expressing purpose, 142, 143.
5. Active and passive periphrastic, 94, 95.
6. *Cūrō, trādō, dō* with the gerundive.
7. Unreal conditions in indirect discourse, 169. 4, 5.

361. The instructor should form original English sentences employing the words of 359 and the constructions of 360. These sentences may be given to the class for oral or written sight practice.

PART III

CICERO, FIRST ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

NOTE. The student should not depend on the English-Latin vocabulary for the Latin words. The text upon which each chapter is based should be consulted for the necessary words and phrases.

362

CHAPTER I

<i>a.</i> quid cōsili cēperis, quem nostrum ignōrāre arbitrāris?	<i>a.</i> who of us do you think is ignorant of what plan you adopted?
<i>b.</i> tē dūcī iam pridem oportēbat.	<i>b.</i> long ago you ought to have been led.
<i>c.</i> novīs rēbus studentem.	<i>c.</i> who desired a revolution.
<i>d.</i> Nōn deest rei pūblicae cōsiliū.	<i>d.</i> the republic does not lack the advice.

1. How long, Catiline, do you think you can baffle us?
2. The senate has been called together in¹ a strongly fortified place.
3. We saw what plans you adopted night before last.
4. Each one of us is marked out for slaughter by Catiline.
5. If we avoid² that fellow's weapons, shall we do our duty by the state?
6. Catiline ought to have been killed long ago.
7. Ought we to put up with Catiline when³ he desires a revolution?

¹ into, why?

² See 104.

³ "when he desires" — use a participle.

8. Do you remember that Publius Scipio, although a private citizen, killed Tiberius Gracchus?

9. There was once such virtue among the consuls that they punished a dangerous citizen most vigorously.

10. We consuls do not lack the authority of the senate.

363

CHAPTER II

<p><i>a.</i> C. Gracchus, clāriſsimō patre.</p> <p><i>b.</i> num ūnum diem L. Sāturninum mors remorāta est?</p> <p><i>c.</i> erit verendum mihi.</p> <p><i>d.</i> nōndum addūcor ut faciam.</p> <p><i>e.</i> cum iam nēmō tam improbus invenīrī poterit, quī nōn fateātur.</p> <p><i>f.</i> Quam diū quisquam erit quī audeat.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> Gaius Gracchus, a man of very famous father.</p> <p><i>b.</i> death did not keep Lucius Saturninus waiting for one day, did it?</p> <p><i>c.</i> I shall have to fear.</p> <p><i>d.</i> I am not yet induced to do.</p> <p><i>e.</i> when now no one can be found so wicked as not to acknowledge.</p> <p><i>f.</i> As long as there will be any one who dares.</p>
--	--

1. Let the consul see that not a night intervenes.

2. They killed Gaius Gracchus, a man of very distinguished ancestry.

3. Did not¹ the senate decree that the state should be intrusted to the consuls?

4. Gaius Servilius was killed, was he not?¹

5. We shall not allow Catiline to live, shall¹ we?

6. Since Cicero desired not to seem hasty, he condemned himself for inactivity.

7. If the leader of the enemy is in the city and actually among us, ought he not to be killed?

8. We shall not have to fear that we have acted too cruelly.

¹ Review 78.

9. Yet¹ Cicero was not induced to arrest Catiline.
 10. There is no one so like Catiline as to acknowledge that I have acted cruelly.
 11. Is there any one who says that I am arbitrary?²
 12. We shall watch them, although³ they know it not.

364

CHAPTER III

<i>a.</i> obliviscere caedis atque incendiōrum.	<i>a.</i> forget (cease to think about) murder and fire.
<i>b.</i> licet recōgnōscās.	<i>b.</i> you may review.
<i>c.</i> ante diem XII Kalendās Novembrīs.	<i>c.</i> the twelfth day before the Kalends of November (<i>i.e.</i> October 21).
<i>d.</i> nihil cōgitās, quod nōn ego audiam.	<i>d.</i> you plan nothing that I do not hear of.

1. Is there anything that a private house can contain within its walls?⁴
 2. You may believe my words.
 3. Cease to think about that purpose of yours.
 4. Don't you see that not only the deed but also the very day did not escape me?
 5. On the 29th⁵ of October many left Rome to avoid your wicked companions.
 6. You don't forget, do you, that you were surrounded so that you could not move against the state?
 7. You are content with the slaughter of the rest of us who remain.
 8. I am confident that you will kill those who remain.
 9. You do nothing that is not reported to me at once.
 10. On the 24th⁵ of October Manlius was in arms.

¹ vērūm.² dissolūtus.³ See 87, 6.⁴ What is the difference in meaning between *pariēs*, *moenia*, and *mūrus*?⁵ See H. 754-756 (641-645); LM. 1169-1171; A. 376; G. Appendix; B. 371, 372.

365

CHAPTER IV

<p><i>a.</i> Hōs ego dē rē pūblicā sententiam rogō.</p> <p><i>b.</i> dixistī paulum tibi esse etiam nunc morae quod ego vīverem.</p> <p><i>c.</i> Repertī sunt duo equitēs Rōmānī quī tē istā cūrā liberārent.</p> <p><i>d.</i> sēsē interfectūrōs esse pollicērentur.</p> <p><i>e.</i> salūtātum.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> I call upon them to vote on public matters.</p> <p><i>b.</i> you said you were even now delayed a little because I lived.</p> <p><i>c.</i> Two Roman knights were found to free you from that care.</p> <p><i>d.</i> promised to kill.</p> <p><i>e.</i> in order to pay their respects.</p>
--	--

1. Cicero used¹ to keep a sharp lookout for the safety of the state.

2. You don't deny, do you, that you were at Marcus Laeca's house?

3. If you had denied it, I would have proven it.

4. We have right² here in this senate men who are your companions in crime.

5. I ought not to call upon such men to vote.

6. I have not arrested these men, because³ I wish you to lead them out with you.

7. You were delayed a little, because³ I fortified my house.

8. You sent men to kill me at my house.

9. Romans used¹ to go to the house of the consul to pay their respects.

10. You promised to free us from the conspirators.

¹ See 103.

² This word merely emphasizes "here." How should it be expressed in Latin?

³ See 173.

<i>a.</i> Quae cum ita sint.	<i>a.</i> Since this is so, (therefore).
<i>b.</i> dum modo inter mē atque tē mūrus intersit.	<i>b.</i> if only (provided) a wall intervene between you and me.
<i>c.</i> nullō tumultū concitātō.	<i>c.</i> without arousing any con- fusion.
<i>d.</i> quod hūius imperī proprium est.	<i>d.</i> which belongs to this power of mine.
<i>e.</i> mē imperante.	<i>e.</i> at my command.

1. Since your companions long for you, leave the city.
2. I shall be relieved of great fear, provided you take out with you as many of your friends as you can.

3. A wall ought to intervene between you¹ and me.

4. We should thank Jupiter for² having saved the city.

5. As long as Cicero could defend himself by personal watchfulness, he did not employ a public guard.

6. You cannot become consul without killing all your rivals.

7. I shall oppose Catiline, although he dooms³ me to destruction.

8. Although this belongs to my power, I have not yet dared to kill Catiline.

9. If the consul should order you to leave the city, you would not hesitate to go, would you, Catiline?

10. Will you go at the consul's advice?

11. I have long been urging⁴ you to do this without my command.

¹ "you and me." Note the order of these words in the next.

² "for having saved" = because he has saved.

³ vocō.

⁴ See 147.

367

CHAPTER VI

<i>a.</i> nēmō est quī tē nōn ōderit.	<i>a.</i> there is no one who does not hate you.
<i>b.</i> ita coniectās ut vītārī posse nōn vidērentur.	<i>b.</i> so aimed that they seemed impossible to be avoided.
<i>c.</i> Quotiēns tibi iam extorta est ista sīca dē manibus !	<i>c.</i> How often already has that dagger been wrested from your hands !
<i>d.</i> quod eam necesse putās esse dēfigere.	<i>d.</i> that you think that you must plunge it, etc.

1. What patriotic citizen does not hate Catiline ?
2. What disgraceful act is there that does not cling to your reputation ?
3. There was nobody who did not fear Catiline.
4. Have you not offered to many¹ a young man swords for their reckless daring ?
5. I will, however, pass this all by.
6. Would² that such a crime had not been unpunished.
7. Who doesn't know that you came into the comitium for the sake of killing the consuls ?
8. On the 29th of December it was the good luck of the Roman people that opposed your purpose.
9. It seemed impossible³ for you to kill the consul.
10. When⁴ I was consul-elect, I wrested that dagger from your⁵ hands.
11. Do you think that you must kill the consul ?

¹ " Many a young man " = many young men.

³ There is no adjective in Latin for " impossible."

⁵ Do not use tuus. See 36.

² See 128, 129.

⁴ See 3.

<p><i>a.</i> Quid, quod ista subsellia vacuēfacta sunt?</p> <p><i>b.</i> Sī tē parentēs timērent at- que ōdissent tuī aliquō concēderēs.</p> <p><i>c.</i> mē esse . . . nōn est feren- dum.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> What of the fact that those seats near you were va- cated?</p> <p><i>b.</i> If your parents feared and hated you, you would re- tire somewhere.</p> <p><i>c.</i> it is not to be endured that I should be, etc.</p>
---	--

1. Ought Cicero to have been moved by hatred or pity?
2. Did you not see the seats vacated as soon as you came into the senate?
3. What of the fact that this has happened to nobody since¹ the founding of the city?
4. Do you not think you ought to leave the city?
5. If² my fellow-citizens should hate me, I would not wish to be seen by them.
6. If you knew what the citizens think of you, you would avoid their sight.
7. If Catiline had feared his country's authority, he would have followed her decree.
8. Your country has long been of the opinion that you would not hesitate to overthrow her laws.
9. In your³ case alone crime has existed unpunished for many years.
10. It is not to be endured that we should always fear you.
11. If you leave the city, we shall sometime at length cease fearing.
12. You would have gone long ago, had you regarded⁴ the feelings of your countrymen.

¹ "since the founding of the city" = after the city having been founded.

² Review 121-125. ³ "In your case" — use dative of reference. ⁴ sequor.

369

CHAPTER VIII

<p><i>a.</i> ad M'. Lepidum.</p> <p><i>b.</i> ut tē adservārem rogāstī.</p> <p><i>c.</i> faciam ut intellegās.</p> <p><i>d.</i> eōsdem facile addūcam ut tē prōsequantur.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> at the house of Manlius Lepidus.</p> <p><i>b.</i> you asked me to keep you.</p> <p><i>c.</i> I will make you understand.</p> <p><i>d.</i> I will easily induce these same persons to escort you.</p>
---	---

1. Cicero said to Catiline that, if the country should speak with him, as he had said, she ought to gain her request.

2. To avoid suspicion, Catiline asked Lepidus to keep him at his house.

3. If I am in great danger because city walls do not intervene between you and me, certainly we cannot live within the same house walls.

4. If you are worthy¹ of guardianship, ought you to be out of prison?

5. Cicero asked why, if he could not die with resignation, he hesitated to leave Rome.

6. Cicero will make Catiline leave the city of his own accord.

7. Catiline said he would go into exile, if the senate should vote that to be its pleasure.

8. Then Cicero said the senators expressed their approval by their silence.²

9. Do you think that the senate would³ have kept silent, had Cicero said the same thing to a patriotic citizen?

10. The senators could overhear the applause of the Roman knights who stood around the senate in crowds.⁴

¹ See 47, 2.

² "by their silence" — use a participle.

³ Review 169.

⁴ "in crowds" — use the adjective formed from *frequentia*.

11. Cicero said he would induce the citizens to escort Catiline to the gates as he left Rome.

370

CHAPTER IX

<p><i>a.</i> Utinam tibi istam mentem dī immortālēs duint (dent).</p> <p><i>b.</i> Sed est tantī.</p> <p><i>c.</i> ut lēgum poenās pertimēs- cās nōn est postulandum.</p>	<p><i>a.</i> Would that the immortal gods would give you that purpose.</p> <p><i>b.</i> But it is worth while.</p> <p><i>c.</i> it is not to be expected that you should fear the pun- ishment of the laws (cf. Ch. VII, <i>c</i>).</p>
---	---

1. O¹ that Catiline would reform!
2. Would that you had been frightened² at my words, and gone² into exile!
3. It is worth while for me to endure the storm of unpopularity.
4. It was not to be expected that fear should ever recall Catiline from danger.
5. For he was not the man to fear anything.
6. Provided³ you separate yourself from loyal citizens, leave the city.
7. If you should go straight into exile, I would not be able to endure the unpopularity.
8. Catiline will not wage war upon his country until³ he betakes himself to Manlius.
9. I feel sure that you will go to the camp of Manlius, because you have sent the eagle ahead.
10. Don't remain in Rome any longer, for how⁴ can you get along without your friends?

¹ Review 128, 129.

² Do not use two coördinate verbs.

³ Review 172.

⁴ Cf. ut . . . possis in the text.

371

CHAPTER X

a. Habēs ubi ostentēs.

a. You have an opportunity to show (literally you have where you may show).

1. On the 8th¹ of November Cicero had an opportunity to show that power² of speech for which nature had trained him.

2. He told the senate that Catiline had got³ together a band of ruffians who were bereft of all hope.

3. With what pleasure did Cicero rejoice when he saw none but loyal citizens in Rome!

4. Catiline had many an opportunity to plot against peaceful citizens.

5. But he will never have an opportunity of assailing the republic as a consul.

6. I wish you to leave the city, so that your conspiracy may be called robbery rather than warfare.

7. Although you have wonderful endurance, yet you will soon be exhausted by cold and hunger.

372

CHAPTER XI

a. Praeclāram refers grātiām
(cf. habēre grātiām and
agere grātiās).

a. You show a noble gratitude.

b. sī quis est metus.

b. if there is any fear.

1. Senators, I urge you to hear what the country says to Catiline.

2. Don't you think that his country ought to be dearer to him than his very life?

¹ See Ch. III, n. 2.

² "power of speech" = dicendī facultās.

³ Review 165, 166.

3. Many thought that Cicero was not sending Catiline out of the city, but letting him loose against the city.

4. Cicero told the senators not¹ to fear the laws about Roman citizens.

5. For he said that those who had revolted from the republic were not citizens.

6. If Cicero had any² fear of unpopularity, he would not show gratitude to his country.

7. Do you think that Cicero ought to neglect the safety of his countrymen, seeing that they had raised him at a very early age to the consulship?

8. Cicero dreaded the reproach of inactivity no less than that of severity.

373

CHAPTER XII

<i>a.</i> quī hōc idem sentiunt.		<i>a.</i> who hold the same views.
<i>b.</i> optimum factū.		<i>b.</i> the best thing to do.
<i>c.</i> Hōc ūnō interfectō.		<i>c.</i> if this one man is killed.
<i>d.</i> sī in huncanim advertissem.		<i>d.</i> if I had punished him.

1. It is the best thing to do to make a brief reply to those who hold the same views.

2. If you all had held the same views as³ I do,⁴ Catiline would not have lived for one hour.

3. We ought not to fear that we shall disgrace ourselves by killing⁵ Catiline.

4. And yet there are some senators who help Catiline by not believing that there is any conspiracy.

5. If I should punish him, they would blame me.

6. If Catiline was killed, will any one be foolish⁶ enough to think that the conspiracy has been blotted out.

¹ "not to fear," see 162.

² See 72.

³ quī.

⁴ Omit. ⁵ Use participle.

⁶ "foolish enough" = so foolish as to, etc.

7. Catiline must lead out all his companions in order to destroy the root and seed of all evil.

8. I wish he would do this!

374

CHAPTER XIII

a. nesciō quō pactō.

b. Quā rē sēcēdant improbi.

a. somehow or other (literally, by some means).

b. Therefore let the rascals depart.

1. Somehow or other, senators, let us be rid of this danger.

2. Don't let the danger remain in the vitals of the republic.

3. If Catiline is removed, we shall not be entirely relieved, if¹ his companions are left at Rome.

4. If they cannot cease plotting against us; I recommend that they be separated from loyal men.

5. They hold such views about the republic that they ought not to live with us any longer.

6. But if Catiline will only depart, I promise you that everything will be brought to light and punished.

7. Then, imploring² Jupiter to defend the republic from all danger, Cicero finished his speech and sat down.

¹ Do not use a *sī* clause.

² Do not use a participle.

SECOND ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

375

CHAPTER I

1. At last, fellow-citizens, Catiline has left of his own accord, threatening us all with destruction.

2. The danger has been unquestionably removed from the forum and senate house, for he must now wage war openly.

3. He was almost overwhelmed with grief, because¹ I was alive and the citizens safe.

4. He would² like to have left with the consuls dead and the city burned.

5. I have no doubt that he often laments the fact³ that the city is standing.

6. She, however, is glad because¹ that fellow has burst forth.

7. Don't you think we all ought to thank the gods for our good fortune?

376

CHAPTER II

1. Who is there who would blame Cicero for not having arrested Catiline?

2. How many did not credit the facts⁴ that Cicero laid before the senate?

¹ Should the indicative or subjunctive be used with quod? See 173.

² See 118, 127.

³ Omit.

⁴ Omit.

3. If I had put Catiline to death, as I ought to have¹ done, many would have accused me severely.

4. And yet I would have done this, had I thought that his removal² would save the state.

5. Now that he is gone, we can fight the enemy openly.

6. Cicero was vexed that Catiline left his followers at Rome.

7. We may judge how valiant they are.

8. I wish we could fight them all as easily as we can Catiline.

377

CHAPTER III

1. The army which Catiline had with him was greatly to be despised in comparison with Roman soldiers.

2. If I had shown them³ the praetor's edict, they would have taken to their heels.

3. Cicero did not think that those who remained in the city were greatly to be feared.

4. The consul knew to whom each district had been assigned.

5. Is it not strange that they are not alarmed, seeing⁴ that I know all their plans?

6. Bear in mind that I will not always be lenient.

378

CHAPTER IV

1. I have made⁵ you all see that Catiline, and men like him, have formed a conspiracy against the state.

2. If they will all leave, I will show them the road by which Catiline set out.

¹ "to have done" — omit.

² "his removal" — express in some other way than by a noun.

³ Use relative. What should its position be?

⁴ Do not use the participle.

⁵ See Ch. VIII, c.

3. What crime is there that they can devise, now that he has left?

4. For there was no assassin, no scoundrel, no robber, who did not live on most intimate terms with Catiline.

5. I suppose¹ nobody ever had as much power² over young men as he had.

6. All who were heavily in debt were united with him in crime.

379

CHAPTER V

1. I want you all to realize that Catiline was intimate with all who are fickle and worthless.

2. Who can endure that such men should boast that Catiline is a brave man, when he thinks of nothing but assassination and robbery?

3. Oh, how fortunate we would be, had they all gone along with Catiline!

4. If they merely wasted their property and ran³ into debt, we could put up with them.

5. But do you think that we ought to allow them to plot against the property of loyal men?

6. If I felt sure that some fate were approaching them,⁴ I would think that I had added many years to the republic.

7. Fellow-citizens, we have conquered all our foreign enemies, therefore we ought not to hesitate to struggle with these domestic perils.

8. I will be your leader, and I warn those rascals to look out for the doom that hangs over them.

¹ *crēdō*.

² Do not use a noun; express the idea by a verb.

³ "ran into debt" = became overwhelmed with debt.

⁴ See 33.

380

CHAPTER VI

1. I did not drive Catiline into exile, for he is not such a modest man as to be unable to bear the voice of the consul.

2. I will tell you, fellow-citizens, what happened in the senate yesterday.

3. When Catiline had the effrontery¹ to be present, the chief men of that body would not sit in the same seats with him.

4. I asked him who of us he thought did not know what he had been doing during the past² few days.

5. I showed him that I knew all the details³ of the war.

6. If we know that you have made all preparations; why do you hesitate to go where your standard has been sent?

7. Do you believe that Manlius is waging war on his own account?

381

CHAPTER VII

1. I wonder whether or not Cicero really desired Catiline to wage war against his country.

2. For if he should give up the plan of making war and go into exile, there would be persons who would say that he had been driven out by violent⁴ threats.

3. And yet Cicero said it was worth his while to undergo a storm of unpopularity, provided he be rid of Catiline.

4. What would these fault-finders⁵ say, if Catiline should march upon Rome with an army?

5. And yet I think he is more likely⁶ to do this than to go alone into exile.

¹ "had the effrontery" — use a verb.

² ante.

³ "all the details" — one Latin word.

⁴ "violent threats" = violence and threats.

⁵ Use a relative clause.

⁶ See 94.

6. Don't complain because some say that Catiline has gone to Massilia.
7. I would rather have him go there than join Manlius.

382

CHAPTER VIII

1. Cicero thought he ought to say a few words about those who remained at Rome, rather than about one who acknowledged he was an enemy.
2. I will show you how these can be brought to their senses.
3. One class of these consists of men whose appearance is very respectable, for they have great possessions.
4. If I were rich, I would not hesitate to pay my debts with the income of my estate.
5. You are mistaken, if you think you will get new accounts from Catiline.
6. If we can induce¹ them to give up some of their property to pay their debts, we will find them better citizens.
7. I don't think these rich men are likely to bear arms against the state.

383

CHAPTER IX

1. Cicero said that, if the republic were undisturbed, the second class would be unable to secure the offices.
2. I give these exactly² the same advice as the others, not to attempt to secure the mastery of Rome.
3. Let them understand that the gods are going to help us in person, and that there is great harmony among all the citizens.

¹ See Ch. II, d.

² "exactly the same as" = one and the same which.

4. But if they gain their heart's¹ desire, will they not have to yield the offices to some other person?

5. The colonists as a whole are excellent men, but there are some who make an extravagant display of their wealth.

6. They would not have fallen into such heavy debt, had Sulla been alive to help them.

7. Everybody remembers Sulla's proscriptions with such grief that I don't believe that even these colonists would now be likely to endure such robbery.

384

CHAPTER X

1. The fourth class consists of those who are so heavily in debt that they are all hurrying to Catiline's camp to extricate themselves from debt.

2. If these men should perish one and all, I do not think their next-door neighbors² would notice it.

3. I ask you, fellow-citizens, whether you think it more disgraceful to perish alone than with the multitude.

4. If the prison is not large enough³ to hold these criminals, is it not a good thing to have them go to that camp?

5. Let all assassins and criminals who belong peculiarly to Catiline join with him, so that their zeal may be spent on the toils of camp.

6. I wonder how these poor wretches will learn how to get along without Catiline.

385

CHAPTER XI

1. Cicero thought that the war need not be feared, if the Roman generals only lead the flower and strength of their troops against Catiline.

¹ "heart's desire" — express the idea by a relative clause.

² What does this expression really mean?

³ "large enough to hold" = sufficiently large so as to hold.

2. For an outcast and broken-down band of criminals cannot be a match¹ for all of Italy.

3. If he did not lack everything that we are supplied with, still honor and bravery could not contend with baseness and cowardice.

4. Honesty and treachery cannot contend together² without the immortal gods compelling virtue to conquer vice.

386

CHAPTER XII

1. I have informed you, fellow-citizens, about this conspiracy, and I will also provide a sufficient guard for your safety.

2. I have found out that the gladiators are better disposed than we thought they would be.

3. We have sent Metellus ahead to check³ all of Catiline's attempts.

4. Those whom Catiline has left at Rome should be warned again and again that the consuls are watchful.

5. As for the future,⁴ don't forget that we must live together.

6. Since the senate is brave and we have a prison, I warn these to keep quiet or leave.

387

CHAPTER XIII

1. It is hardly to be expected that this war can be settled without the death of some one.

2. Yet I will so manage affairs as a civilian that every loyal man will be safe.

¹ "be a match for" = respondeō.

³ "to check" — express in three different ways.

² See 68.

⁴ = what is left.

3. Cicero thought that the gods, who had defended Rome from many an enemy, would now defend the citizens from these perils.

4. If you rely upon the leadership¹ of the gods, I promise you that all will be safe.

5. We should² all implore the gods to overcome these wicked domestic enemies.

¹ "leadership of the gods" = the gods as leaders.

² Does this mean that "we ought to" ?

THIRD ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

388

CHAPTER I

Cicero told the Romans that he had saved their wives, children, and property by his labors. He said that he deserved to be held in no less honor with his countrymen than the man who had founded the city. "For," said he, "is it not a greater task¹ to save our city after it has grown than it was to found it many years ago? Now listen to me diligently as I tell² you how all the details of Catiline's conspiracy have been brought to light."

389

CHAPTER II

Ever since³ Catiline was driven out of the city and was compelled to leave at Rome his companions in crime, I have been anxious to know what they did and how they spent their days and nights. I thought my oration would gain greater credence in your ears, if I could only make you see the danger with your own eyes. At last an opportunity that I had long been desiring was offered to me. Some ambassadors from Gaul had been tampered with by Lentulus, so as to aid his cause by stirring up a rebellion in Gaul. These ambassadors had on⁴ their persons letters that they had been asked to give to Catiline. Therefore I

¹ "a greater task" = of greater labor.

² Use a participle.

³ "Ever since" = ut.

⁴ "on their persons" = apud sē.

sent some patriotic men to the Mulvian bridge, which the Gauls had to cross, to arrest the ambassadors and deliver the letters to me.

390

CHAPTER III

After the battle was over, all the letters were handed over to the officers, while¹ the men were arrested and brought to Rome. Many prominent men, who were at Cicero's house, were of the opinion that the consul ought to open the letters before they were laid before the senate. Cicero, however, said² he would not report the affair to the senate, unless the seals were unbroken, for he thought that too much carefulness could not be employed. Meanwhile the praetor, who had been ordered to bring whatever weapons there were at the house of Cethegus, returned with a large number.

391

CHAPTER IV

Volturcius, on being urged to tell what he knew, said that the conspirators were about to set fire to the city and assassinate as many of the citizens as possible, that letters had been sent to Catiline urging³ him to⁴ come to their aid as soon as possible. The Gauls said that they would⁵ have united their cavalry with the infantry of the conspirators. Lentulus thought he was the one who was about to become king after this year, and he had a quarrel with Cethegus as to the time of burning the city.

¹ Omit.² "said he would not" = denied that he would.³ Omit.⁴ Do not use the infinitive.⁵ Is a condition implied?

To be brief, all the conspirators, at the production¹ of the letters, identified the seals and handwriting, and they were so conscience-stricken that they either became silent or confessed. I asked Lentulus if he didn't think that the memory of his grandfather ought² to have recalled him from his madness. When he was given³ an opportunity to say a few words about the Gauls, although nobody surpassed him in impudence, he did not deny that he had spoken to the Gauls about the rule and control of the republic. The letter from Lentulus to Catiline said that Catiline would know who he was from the person he had sent to him, and it urged him to secure as much help as possible. Finally, citizens, all these things were such sure proofs of crime that they did not have to be betrayed by their comrades.

After the evidence had all been set forth, the senate thanked Cicero for arresting⁴ the conspirators and exposing their plans; also Flaccus and Pomptinus because the consuls had found them such brave assistants. Then the senators voted to deliver into custody Lentulus, Cethegus, and the others who had evidently⁵ been engaged in the conspiracy. A thanksgiving has often been voted to others for glorious deeds, but never before to anybody for saving the republic. Scruples had prevented Marius from⁶ punishing the praetor Glaucia, therefore Lentulus was compelled to resign his office, so that he might be punished as a private citizen.

¹ Do not use a noun.² See III.³ Ablative absolute.⁴ See 173.⁵ Express this idea by a verb.⁶ Cf. in text religiō . . . quō minus.

394

CHAPTER VII

When Catiline had been driven from the city, Cicero supposed he would not have to fear the rest, who were not so dangerous. For Catiline was very shrewd and watchful, and he was not a man who thought a deed was done when he had given the order. There was no cold or hunger that he could not endure. He was so keen and bold that we could¹ have removed this great danger from you only¹ with the greatest difficulty. If he had been in the city, he would not have allowed the letters to have been written, and we then would have been compelled² to catch the rascals in some other way.

395

CHAPTER VIII

Cicero accomplished so much during his consulship that the management could not have belonged³ to human wisdom. Not⁴ to speak of the earthquakes and the other wonderful things, you all surely remember that not long ago the statue of Romulus, the founder of this city, was struck by lightning and thrown down. The soothsayers predicted that the whole city would be destroyed, unless the Fates could be turned. And so, to propitiate the gods, the Romans instituted ten days' games, and the consuls contracted for the erection of a larger statue of Jupiter, and ordered it to be placed on high ground facing the east. Is it not remarkable, fellow-citizens, that this statue was not erected until yesterday, the time when this conspiracy was found out?

¹ "could . . . only with" = could not . . . except by.

² Express the idea of necessity by the second periphrastic conjugation.

³ "have belonged to" = have been of. ⁴ See text of Ch. V, first words.

396

CHAPTER IX

Nobody can deny that, if the gods had not controlled everything, the conspirators would not have been led to the senate house on the very day that the statue of Jupiter was turned toward the forum. Who, therefore, is so bereft of reason as to deny that the gods are worthy of all honor for saving us from slaughter and fire? Certainly Lentulus would not have been foolish enough¹ to intrust such important business to barbarians, had not the gods wished this beautiful city to be safe. What was it, unless the favor of the gods, that prevented our old enemies, the Gauls, from² overcoming us by merely saying nothing?

397

CHAPTER X

Therefore, fellow-citizens, I urge you to celebrate those games which the senate has decreed, for never before have civilians been victorious with a civilian for their general. If you should compare this conspiracy with the civil dissensions of Marius and Sulla, which doubtless you yourselves remember, you would recall that they wished merely³ to change the government, not to destroy it. One⁴ ought not to speak about⁵ the extent of the slaughter of the citizens without feeling grateful to the gods that we are now all safe and sound. Don't forget that, although Catiline wished to burn as much of the city and kill as many of us as he could, I have so managed affairs that not a patriotic citizen should perish.

¹ "foolish enough to intrust" = so foolish that he intrusted.

² See 150.

³ *Modo*, postpositive.

⁴ "One ought not to speak" = it ought not to be said.

⁵ "about . . . citizens" — express by a clause.

398

CHAPTER XI

In return for the preservation of the state, fellow-citizens, I ask for no mute memorial of praise, but that you all remember that it was I who disclosed this conspiracy. There are many less worthy men who can acquire triumphs and monuments. It will be enough glory for me that you remember that, of the two prominent citizens of this time, one enlarged¹ the state while² the other saved it.

399

CHAPTER XII

Foreign victors³ are better⁴ off than I am, because I cannot kill my enemies, but must remain in Rome with them. It is, therefore, the duty of the Roman people to see that nobody harms me, for if you allow me to be annoyed, others will not be likely⁵ to expose themselves to danger to protect you. As for me, I have enough glory, and there is no higher step to which I care to ascend. I desire to so conduct myself that you will not think that it was by chance that I saved the republic. Therefore, fellow-citizens, now that it is night, you ought to pray⁶ to yonder Jupiter, and then go home to defend the city.

¹ *amplificō.*

² *Omit.*

³ "Foreign victors" — express by a relative clause.

⁴ *Cf.* in text the first sentence of this chapter.

⁵ *See 94.*

⁶ *Use the participle.*

FOURTH ORATION AGAINST CATILINE

400

CHAPTER I

After the senate had been called together to see what disposition¹ should be made of the conspirators, all turned their eyes toward Cicero as he was about to express his opinion.¹ He urged them to forget his safety and plan only for the highest² interests of the state. He said he would endure every hardship, provided he could free his countrymen from danger. "You know, senators," said he, "that I have never been free from danger either in the senate house or at my own home, where I ought to enjoy quiet; and yet I would endure whatever fate awaits me, should I be able to rescue these buildings from foul destruction. I am pleased to think that my consulship has been almost destined for the safety of the republic."

401

CHAPTER II

I beg of you, senators, look out for yourselves. Don't spare me, for if I were not ready to die with composure, I would be a wretch and unworthy of my office. And yet I am not the man to disregard³ the feelings of my wife, daughter, and son, whom you see standing around. If I

¹ Avoid the use of the noun.

² "for the . . . state" = *dē summā rē publicā*.

³ *neglegō*.

am moved by these things, it is only that they may not perish along with me. These men whom we have brought to trial are not like ordinary criminals, for they have formed a plan of so destroying the republic that nobody shall be left who does not hold the same views¹ as they do.

402

CHAPTER III

Cicero said that the senate had already passed judgment on the facts of the case,² because yesterday they had voted to thank him, reward the Gauls, and commit the prisoners to jail; but he said that they must now vote as to the punishment, although they would doubtless convict them. He said that it was the consul's duty³ to state that a greater conspiracy than they imagined was brewing,⁴ and was spreading over Italy and even in Gaul; and that if they thought it could be checked by procrastination, they would soon see that they were greatly mistaken. He therefore urged the senate to punish the criminals quickly.

403

CHAPTER IV

There are two views as to the punishment, one of which you ought to adopt.⁵ Silanus is of the opinion that men who did not wish us to enjoy this fair city or even our lives ought to be killed: he calls our attention to the fact⁶ that prisoners less dangerous than these have often been punished by death. Caesar, on the other hand, holds⁷ that

¹ "hold the same views," see I, Ch. XII, *a*.

³ "consul's duty" = of the consul.

⁵ sequor.

⁷ Not teneō. What does this really mean in this connection?

² "of the case" — omit.

⁴ Passive of misceō.

⁶ May this be omitted?

death is not a suitable punishment for wicked citizens. He urges that their property be confiscated, that they be put under guard for life among the municipal towns, and that nobody be allowed to lighten their punishment. If you decide upon this punishment, I have no doubt that I can find towns that will be willing to guard them. And yet, don't you think it would be better to take away their lives rather than to leave no hope to console them in their misery?

404

CHAPTER V

Cicero realized that it was for his own¹ personal² interest that the senators should follow Caesar's view, who he said was truly devoted to the people. He was inclined³ to think that his enemies would say he had acted contrary to the Sempronian law, if he should put these citizens to death. Cicero, however, argued that by forming a conspiracy they had become public enemies, and were no longer citizens. When Caesar did not hesitate to express his opinion about the guilt and punishment of the prisoners, Cicero said there was a great difference between him and the other democrats who were absent to avoid⁴ voting on the life of a Roman citizen. Nobody had any reason to⁵ doubt Caesar's loyalty⁶ to his country.

405

CHAPTER VI

If, therefore, you adopt⁷ the proposal of Silanus, I shall easily free myself from the charge of cruelty. Now may

¹ See 28.² ipsius.³ Cf. nesciō an in the text.⁴ Express this idea in some other way than by a verb.⁵ Wherefore he should doubt.⁶ voluntās.⁷ What tense should this be?

I be allowed to show you, senators, that the most severe punishment in such a case as this is not cruelty. When I seem to see these buildings falling in ruins and the citizens unburied, when Lentulus and Cethegus appear before my eyes in full power,¹ exulting at the wailing of the women, I think I should be most cruel if I did not punish them very severely. Let me ask you whether you would not punish a slave most vigorously, if you knew he had killed your wife and children. Had I been lenient in such a case, you would say that I was most cruel toward my family. There are men in times of party strife who would receive severe wounds to prevent² the highest interests of the state from suffering any loss. Therefore you ought not to fear that you will pass too severe a measure against these men who had assigned to one the overthrow³ of the republic, to another the slaughter of all the citizens.

406

CHAPTER VII

If you vote to put these men to death, there are some who fear that you will not be able to carry out your plans. I would⁴ like to say, however, that I shall have enough help, since almost all the citizens hold the same views as we do. The knights and senators, through their desire to hold imperial power, and by the common peril, have been restored to harmony. What danger can come to the state, or who will not thoroughly enjoy the possession of liberty, if this⁵ harmony shall last forever?

¹ Use participle.

² Cf. in text *nē* quid *dē*minuerētur.

³ "the overthrow of the republic" = the republic to be overthrown.

⁴ Potential subjunctive.

⁵ Use the relative, and put this clause first.

407

CHAPTER VIII

If the freedmen are patriotic,¹ don't you think that men who were born in a high station ought to wish to see this city stand? Even the slaves have been aroused to the defence of the fatherland, and are contributing all they can to your support. Don't be alarmed because rumor² says that Lentulus has been trying to tamper with the destitute, for he could not find any who were willing to join the conspiracy. The shopkeepers also know that their profits will not be maintained, if their shops are burned. Therefore, senators, do not fear that the people will fail you.

408

CHAPTER IX

Cicero, seeing that he had been rescued from the jaws of death, wished to perform his duty as a consul. He reminded the senate that the fatherland was beset by dangers and intrusted itself to them, that they had a leader who would not forget them, and that all the classes of citizens were unanimous³ as to what ought to be done. "Don't allow to be destroyed," said he, "the empire that has been founded with such toil. You must come to a decision at once about the punishment of these prisoners, so that others will never again dare to plot against the welfare⁴ of this nation."

409

CHAPTER X

Cicero had now incurred as many enemies as there were persons implicated⁵ in the conspiracy, and yet he said he

¹ = loving of country. ² "rumor says" — what does this really mean?

³ Avoid the use of an adjective.

⁴ = highest interests.

⁵ versō.

would never repent of what he had done, provided the patriotic citizens proved more powerful than the conspirators. Grant that Scipio put an end to the Punic war, that Paulus conquered King Perses, that Marius saved the Romans from the dominion of the Gauls, still I think it is a greater deed¹ to furnish these victors a country to which to return. Cicero would now have to wage a continual war with his enemies, but he was safe, because there was no power strong enough to overthrow the unanimity of loyal men.

410

CHAPTER XI

As long as the memory of my deeds is² fixed in your mind, I shall be free from all danger. I ask you for nothing except that you see that my son has sufficient protection, and that you keep in mind that he is the son of the man who saved this fair city of yours. I have given up a province in order to secure evidence against these prisoners, but I do it gladly, provided you guard diligently the liberty and safety of the citizens. You have a consul who is not afraid to obey your orders, therefore it is your duty to decide what you think should be done.

¹ Omit.

² What time does this refer to?

POMPEY'S MILITARY COMMAND

411

CHAPTER I

Having¹ spent his early years in the defense of his friends, Cicero decided not to speak from the rostra until he had something² to say that was worthy of a place from which all the best men had spoken. He felt that, inasmuch as his fellow-citizens had elected him praetor, he ought to employ what influence and skill in speaking he had³ in behalf of those who had judged so well of him. He was particularly glad that he was allowed to speak of Pompey, about whom it would not be difficult to find something² to say.

412

CHAPTER II

The situation⁴ is as follows: two kings, Mithridates and Tigranes, thinking⁵ they can get Asia, are bringing war on your allies. The letters brought to me from the Roman knights who manage your revenues show that many villages of your province are being burned by the enemy, that the war is being badly managed by the successor⁶ of Lucullus, and that all your allies are asking for a commander who will make the enemy fear him. In view of the fact, therefore, that the glory of the Roman people,

¹ See 85, 2.

² "something to say" = what he might say. See 174.

³ Cf. in the text — in *mē* est.

⁴ *causa*.

⁵ Do not use the participle.

⁶ See 71, 7.

the safety of your friends, and your largest revenues are at stake, it seems to me that you ought to follow up this war with the greatest zeal.

413

CHAPTER III

Cicero said that it¹ was a deep stain on the name of the Roman people that they allowed Mithridates, a man who had killed so many thousands of the citizens of Rome, to still remain on his throne without having received a punishment worthy of such a crime. Sulla and Murena have each triumphed over² Mithridates, yet after his defeats he still rules. But we must not censure these commanders whom the public interests recalled from the seat³ of war to Rome.

414

CHAPTER IV

Mithridates was so covetous of glory that he could not forget his ambitions,⁴ so he made great preparations to contest the⁵ supremacy with us both by land and sea, and by sending⁶ dispatches to Sertorius planned to attack us while we were waging war in Spain. But, thanks⁷ to the remarkable valor of Pompey and Lucullus, the danger was averted in both quarters. Praise should not be taken from the latter on account of these recent mishaps,⁴ which may be assigned not to his fault but to his fortune.

¹ "it was . . . stain" = a stain was deeply seated.

² *dē*.

³ Do not use *sēdēs*.

⁴ See 71, 7.

⁵ = concerning the.

⁶ Use participle.

⁷ What does this expression really mean?

415

CHAPTER V

If your ancestors many years ago destroyed the beautiful city of Corinth, because¹ their ambassadors had been wrongfully treated, do you think you ought to disregard the cruel² murder of a Roman envoy, the massacre of your citizens, and the loss of your revenues? What, pray, ought your feelings to be when you remember that the safety of your friends and allies is being brought into great danger, and that two powerful kings are threatening the whole of Asia? These allies of yours are worthy³ of being protected carefully, and the more so because the other commanders whom you have sent to them have pillaged their towns. Therefore they would be very glad⁴ to know that you are going to send to defend them Gnaeus Pompey, a man of such kindness and self-control.

416

CHAPTER VI

Your ancestors, fellow-citizens, were so careful to guard the interests⁵ of their allies that they often went to war on their account, even when they themselves had suffered no injury. Therefore it behooves you to protect a province that is such a help to you through its large revenues. There is no land so rich as Asia, or that surpasses it in exports.⁶ You all know, of course, that no taxes can be gathered when agriculture and commerce have been interrupted on account of the approach of the enemy. Therefore, if you would⁷ enjoy the income of a province, you must protect the taxpayer⁶ and the tax-

¹ See 87, 3; 89.

² "the cruel . . . envoy" = a Roman envoy having been cruelly murdered.

³ See 174, 1.

⁴ "very glad to know" = know very gladly.

⁵ *rēs*.

⁶ See 71, 7.

⁷ See 117.

gatherer not only from disaster, but from the fear of disaster.

417

CHAPTER VII

There are other reasons why¹ you must prosecute this war with the greatest vigor. You cannot neglect those respectable men who have invested capital in gathering your taxes without² diminishing your revenues and bringing disaster upon Rome; for if payment should be hindered in Asia, credit would fall at Rome. There are many other active and energetic men who are doing business in Asia, and³ if you do not consider their⁴ interests, it will be difficult to persuade others to invest their money in our provinces. Furthermore, all parts of the empire are so united together that we must bear in mind that it is the part of wisdom to look after the financial interests of our allies as we would our own interests.

418

CHAPTER VIII

Recall with me very briefly, fellow-citizens, what Lucullus did when he was sent to conduct the war against Mithridates eight years ago. He freed from danger a city of the Cyzicenes, which Mithridates was besieging with a large, well-equipped army; he sank a large fleet that was being sent against Italy; he captured many great cities of Pontus and Cappadocia, and compelled the great king, stripped of his dominions, to flee as a suppliant to other kings. In view of these facts there is nobody who can say that I do not accord to Lucullus as much credit as is due the great deeds that he has performed.

¹ quā rē.

² = that not = ut nōn.

³ See 71, 6.

⁴ Omit.

CHAPTER IX

Perhaps it may seem strange to some that a great war still exists, if Lucullus won so many victories. These are the reasons. When¹ Mithridates was fleeing from his kingdom, he left a large quantity of gold and silver to check the speed of his pursuers. If our soldiers had not delayed to gather this² up, he would not have escaped from their hands. Furthermore, when Mithridates arrived among the Armenians, their king, Tigranes, promised to³ help him; likewise many other nations began to fear that our army was likely to plunder their temples, so they joined with Mithridates in his desire to get rid of the Romans. Our soldiers, too, became weary of the long marches, and begged their general to return as soon as possible. All this made it possible for Mithridates not only to return to his own country, but also to enlist the support of other kings, and gather a large army with which he was able to inflict a severe defeat on Lucullus. At this time Lucullus was ordered to hand his army over to Glabrio, and the war, now⁴ that it has been renewed with such vigor, has become very dangerous.

CHAPTER X

Now that we must select a man competent⁵ to take charge of such a perilous war, the choice will not be a difficult one, since we have a general whom all acknowledge to be most skillful⁶ in military affairs. Fresh⁷ from school

¹ Do not use a temporal clause.

² Use a relative. What position should it have?

³ Future infinitive.

⁴ "now . . . renewed" — use a participle.

⁵ See 174, 1.

⁶ See 24.

⁷ What does this word really mean?

he was trained in military discipline in his father's army. When a mere youth he was in charge of an army of his own. His varied experience on land and sea has made him acquainted with all kinds of warfare. He has gained more victories and celebrated more triumphs than any other general of ancient¹ or modern times. In view of all these facts, is there any doubt that he is the one man who can bring this war to a close?

421

CHAPTER XI

There is no man who can show that Pompey does not possess all the virtues of a commander to a greater degree than any one whom we have seen or heard. Cicero said that many powerful enemies, not only abroad but also in Italy, bore² witness to this effect: that Gaul, Spain, and Africa had been freed from danger by his bravery, diligence, and wise³ counsel; that Pompey had cleared the sea of pirates in one year, although they had such firm control of every harbor and bay that none of the revenues were safe; that the Romans could not defend their allies; and that even Roman merchants could not set sail except in winter.

422

CHAPTER XII

In olden times it was the special⁴ province of the Roman people to protect the interests of their allies, and not to guard their own domains; but during the war with the pirates, not only ambassadors from foreign nations were captured, but our own merchants were not safe, and even

¹ "of ancient . . . times" = of those who now are or were in ancient times.

² "bore witness" = were witnesses.

³ "wise counsel" = one word.

⁴ "special province" = proprius.

our children were seized while Roman officers were present. Such was the situation when the Romans very wisely appointed Pompey to take charge of the war with the pirates. If they had appointed a less skillful general, doubtless you would now behold the enemy's ships in the Tiber. Pompey, however, undertook the war with the same zeal that one would employ in the pursuit of gain. Even before the sea was fit for navigation, he sent out ships in all directions to defend the allies of Rome; and then, after defeating¹ the pirates in many engagements, he brought the long and widely scattered war to a close in the middle of the summer. Would not such a general be likely to follow up Mithridates with the greatest zeal, wisdom, and bravery?

423

CHAPTER XIII

But bravery and zeal are not the only qualities that we should look for in a perfect commander. He ought also to be a man of the greatest integrity, self-control, and kindness. Without² mentioning any names, Cicero said that there were commanders who sold offices and drew money from the public treasury to use for their own affairs; that the Romans could easily understand what took place abroad from³ their recollection of how some generals had marched through Italy. Then, after a comparison⁴ with other generals, he made the Romans understand that Pompey was a general of great self-control and kindness, and that he never allowed his army to harm a people which⁵ had once⁶ been subdued.

¹ See 89, 1.

² Use ablative absolute.

³ "from their recollection of" = when they recollected.

⁴ Avoid the use of the noun. ⁵ Do not use a relative clause. ⁶ Omit.

424

CHAPTER XIV

Pompey could finish this war very quickly because no lust called him aside to pleasure, and because he did not allow his soldiers to remove the statues and paintings from the Greek cities. Our allies had heard that our ancestors were men of great self-restraint; but our commanders, by¹ taking everything that they could lay their hands on, made them think that they had been falsely informed. It is not surprising,² therefore, that the allies thought that Pompey was like the old Romans. Furthermore, he was so approachable that even the humblest man dared to speak to him about his troubles. In view of these facts, citizens, ought we to hesitate to put in charge of this war a man who is endowed by nature with so many fine qualities?

425

CHAPTER XV

You were not ignorant, fellow-citizens, that the opinion³ the allies have of our generals is a powerful⁴ factor in carrying on a war; therefore you very wisely demanded for that war Pompey, a general whose reputation alone was almost strong enough to bring the enemy to terms. One can easily show what an influence he holds. Why did grain suddenly become cheaper than in times of great crops, after he had been put in charge of the naval war? And, to cite another example of his ability, when our army had suffered a severe reverse, when Mithridates was flushed with victory, and when many enemies were threatening our

¹ "by taking everything" — ablative absolute.

² to be wondered at.

³ Avoid the use of a corresponding noun in Latin.

⁴ "powerful factor" — do not use the corresponding words in Latin. Express the idea in another way.

allies, there is no doubt that you would have lost all of Asia, had Pompey not arrived at the nick of time. Do you think that the Mithridatic war would now be so dangerous, if ¹ Pompey had been put in charge of it before?

426

CHAPTER XVI

The fact that ambassadors from the Cretans came to Pompey when he was in far-distant lands, and asserted that they preferred to surrender to him rather than to any other Roman commander, shows how great is his influence among our enemies. Why, is there any doubt that Mithridates would not long resist our interests in Asia, if Pompey were commander there, when he sent an ambassador to Spain to Pompey personally,² when³ he was only an ambassador there? I think I ought at this point to say a few words about his good fortune, for we all realize that good fortune is as⁴ important in completing great undertakings as bravery and other qualifications. He has managed affairs at home and in his campaigns with such success that not only the enemy, but even the elements,⁵ have obeyed his will, as⁶ it were. The common safety, therefore, demands that you confer the management of this war upon Pompey.

427

CHAPTER XVII

In addition to these advantages that I have enumerated, the fact that Pompey is already on the ground with an army is another reason why⁷ he should be selected for this

¹ Review 169, 4 and 5.

² See 74, 1.

³ "when . . . there"—do not use a temporal clause.

⁴ "is as important" = is of as much. ⁵ elements = winds and tempests.

⁶ "as it were"—use *videor* in its proper relation to the preceding clause.

⁷ *quā rē*.

war. And yet there are patriotic men, whose influence is very powerful, who, while they acknowledge that Pompey possesses in the highest degree all the qualities of a general, think that it is not consistent¹ with the highest interests of the state to bestow so much power upon one individual. Facts, however, speak² louder than words. These same gentlemen used the same argument when we were about to select a general to put an end to the naval war. If their opinion had prevailed at that time, do you think we would now possess such a vast empire?

428

CHAPTER XVIII

There were many states smaller than ours which were powerful enough to³ defend their own coasts, and yet the Roman people, who possessed such possibilities⁴ in naval affairs before the Gabinian law was passed, were deprived of the use of their harbors and coasts through bad management. Although our ancestors overcame King Perses and laid low the powerful fleets of the Carthaginians, we were not a match for the pirates. Don't you think our officers ought to have been ashamed to oppose the selection of Pompey from that very rostra which had been adorned by the spoils gained by our great generals?

429

CHAPTER XIX

We must all acknowledge that Hortensius and others spoke with good intentions against Pompey, and yet I have no doubt that they are now ashamed of their words, when

¹ See 37.

² "speak louder"—what does this expression really mean?

³ Do not use the infinitive. ⁴ Avoid the use of a corresponding noun in Latin.

they see that Pompey has accomplished¹ the defeat of the pirates in one year. But is it not still more unworthy of these gentlemen that they oppose² the appointment of Gabinius as a lieutenant, especially when Pompey requests it? If Gabinius got Pompey put in command of the naval war, should he not have a share in the glory of that commander? At any rate, if the consuls do not bring before the senate the question of his appointment, nothing but the veto of the praetor will prevent me from³ doing so.

430

CHAPTER XX

Catulus, however, argues⁴ that if we should stake everything upon Pompey, and anything should happen to him, there would be nobody on whom we could rely. Although Catulus is a man of great influence, and one who is very serviceable to the state, yet I differ with him very strongly, feeling,⁵ as I do,⁶ that we should enjoy the services of our great men while they live. When he urges us to follow⁷ the examples of our ancestors, he forgets that we have often in our history placed all our hope on a single individual; in fact, if it were necessary, I could mention many great men who have been put at the head of affairs at critical points.

431

CHAPTER XXI

But, to⁸ speak further about the ability of Pompey, did you ever hear of a private citizen and a mere youth gaining a brilliant victory under his own command? He did⁹ it.

¹ "accomplished the . . . pirates" — cf. in text *effēcit ut . . . vidērēmur*.

² "oppose the appointment" — cf. in text *obtrectātum esse . . . nē lēgārētur*.

³ See 150.

⁴ *dīcō*.

⁵ Do not use the participle.

⁶ "as I do" — is this essential to the thought of the clause? May it be omitted?

⁷ *pāreō*.

⁸ Do not use the infinitive.

⁹ Do not use *faciō*. See 81, 1.

What is so unusual as to intrust the duty of two consuls to a young man? Afterward, although it was not customary to give an army to a man that had not held office, the management of affairs in Africa was intrusted to him, and he soon brought¹ home a victorious army; and, after being exempt from the law, was allowed to celebrate a triumph, though² only a knight. I mention all this³ that Catulus may see that many new precedents have been established in the case of Pompey.

432

CHAPTER XXII

If the outcome⁴ of events shows that Hortensius and Catulus did not act right in trying to prevent us from putting Pompey in charge of the naval war, let us see that their opinions do not prevail now. If⁵ their judgment on public affairs and the ability of Pompey had been better then, we would be able to put more confidence in them now. As I have said before, Pompey has such self-control, as well as bravery, that it is difficult to say whether our allies hate more the avaricious generals that have been sent to them than the enemy fear Pompey. Hortensius and Catulus know how our allies have been pillaged, therefore I cannot understand how they can consider⁶ the best interests of our friends and oppose the appointment of Pompey to the leadership.

¹ Avoid the use of so many coördinate verbs.

² Omit "though only." The emphasis on "knight" may be shown in Latin by its position.

³ Use the relative. What position?

⁴ "outcome of events" = things themselves.

⁵ "if their judgment on . . . had been better" = if they had judged more wisely concerning.

⁶ Use the participle.

433

CHAPTER XXIII

Therefore, since the generals who have been sent against Mithridates have accomplished nothing except¹ to enrich themselves by plundering the property of our allies and the shrines of their temples, it is high time, citizens, that we cease to think of ourselves only, and that we send to Asia a man capable² of looking after the interests of our allies as well as of defeating the enemy. Pompey is a man who is fit to accomplish all this.³ He is not a commander who will think more of becoming rich than of pursuing the enemy, and the fact that our allies will be glad to have him come among them is a proof of this. I have said a great deal about the men who object to this law; but don't forget that there are very many men, who are noted⁴ for their deeds on land and sea, who feel that you should intrust Pompey with this great authority without delay.

434

CHAPTER XXIV

Cicero had now shown the Romans that the war was very important and inevitable,⁵ and that they had only one general capable of bringing it to an end. He then told Manlius that he would devote whatever talent and influence he had to passing⁶ the law, and he urged him not to be frightened from his opinions by anybody. There were some people who felt that Cicero spoke in behalf of the Manilian law to gain the favor of Pompey, who was the leading man in the state at that time; but should we not believe that Cicero was sufficiently patriotic⁷ to do this for the highest interests of the state, and not for his own benefit?

¹ "except to" = nisi ut.

⁵ necessarius.

² See 174, 1.

⁶ cōstituō.

³ Use the relative. ⁴ existō.

⁷ Cf. the text, Ch. XVII, line 10.

THE CITIZENSHIP OF ARCHIAS

435

CHAPTER I

Aulus Licinius had a right to claim the advantage of whatever talent Cicero possessed. For Cicero said that as far back as he could remember Licinius had been his teacher in the liberal arts, and therefore nobody ought to be surprised that he wished to help him; for, although he did not have¹ the same kind of ability as² Licinius, poets and orators were bound together by a certain common bond of relationship.

436

CHAPTER II

The case was being tried before a praetor who was a most excellent man, and in the presence of a large crowd. Therefore Cicero urged the judges not to think it strange that he should not use the ordinary³ court language, but should prefer to adopt a style of speech that is more adapted to the defendant. "I beg of you," said he, "to allow me to speak rather freely about the study of literature. If you should do this, I certainly think I could persuade you to enroll this man as a citizen, even if he were not one."⁴

¹ "he did have" = in *sē fuit*.

³ Cf. in text *inūsītātō*.

² *quae*.

⁴ Omit.

437

CHAPTER III

In his youth Aulus Licinius was trained in the arts, and having devoted himself to writing soon excelled everybody in the city of Corinth.¹ He became so famous for his Greek learning that he was deemed worthy of the acquaintance and hospitality of many learned men both in Italy and in Greece. When in Italy he was presented with citizenship by many Greek cities, which shows that there were some who had ability to estimate genius. On coming to Rome he became acquainted² with many prominent men, who not only treated him with the greatest respect, but even admitted him into their homes. Although still a young man, his acquaintance was cultivated by almost everybody on account of his genius, learning, and native worth.

438

CHAPTER IV

On leaving Rome in company with Lucullus he arrived at Heraclia, a state that enjoyed most favorable treaty rights. Then, deeming³ himself worthy of the citizenship, he got himself enrolled on the ground that he had lived at Rome a long time. Afterward a certain Gratus claimed that he was not a Roman citizen, because he could not prove by the records that he had been enrolled as a citizen either at Rome or some allied city. Now don't you think it was absurd that Gratus should demand the records, which all knew had been burned, and pay no attention⁴ to the oaths of respectable men who saw Licinius present himself before the praetor?

¹ Not genitive.

² "became acquainted with" = cōgnōscō.

³ Do not use the participle.

⁴ "pay no attention to" = repudiō.

439

CHAPTER V

The records neither of Appius nor Gabinius were carefully kept, but Metellus, by whom Licinius was enrolled, was so careful and conscientious that he used to be worried by the erasure of a single name. Furthermore, if the Greek cities were in the habit of giving the citizenship to actors and men of ordinary ability, do you think they would have rejected Licinius, a man of such great genius? Yet Grattius asks for the census, in spite of the fact that he knew Archias was not¹ at Rome either¹ at the last census or¹ the one before that. In view² of all these arguments who can doubt that Aulus Licinius is a Roman citizen?

440

CHAPTER VI

Cicero was greatly pleased with Licinius, because he supplied him with something³ to refresh his mind with after a day's labor, and with the material⁴ for his speeches on a great variety of business. Cicero said that anybody ought to be ashamed so to devote himself to literature that he could not help his friends or contribute to the good of his fellow-countrymen. "For my part,⁵" said he, "I am not ashamed to confess that I devote as much time to these studies as others spend on pleasure and recreation. Unless the teachings of this man and the examples derived from Greek literature had convinced me that fame and integrity should be considered of paramount⁶ worth, I would not have been willing to expose myself to such dangers for your safety."

¹ "not . . . either . . . or" = neither . . . nor.

² Cf. in the text, *Quae cum ita sint*.

³ "something with" = whereby = *ubi*. ⁴ Avoid the use of a noun.

⁵ "For my part"—this merely emphasizes the pronoun *I*.

⁶ What does this word mean?

441

CHAPTER VII

Some one may ask why some of our great generals have not been trained in literature. My reply is that there have been men of such great natural endowments that, even without systematic¹ training, they have shown² themselves to be wise, dignified, and brave. How much greater would such men have been, had they added the benefits of learning to their excellent natural abilities! Such were Scipio Africanus, Cato the elder, and others, men who knew that these studies were of great value to them in attaining virtue. Learning is confined³ neither to time, age, nor place, therefore I think we should all seek these studies for the pleasure they give us, even if no direct⁴ benefit can be shown.

442

CHAPTER VIII

Roscius, who died recently at an advanced age, was a man of such grace that he won the admiration of all of us by the mere movements of his body; do you think, then, that we ought to neglect Archias, who is noted for the speed and agility of his intellect? Why,⁵ I have seen him recite on the spur of the moment, without⁶ writing a single word, excellent poetry on current⁷ events. Let us look upon the poets as men of divine inspiration. If they could make the rocks move, and the wild beasts stop their course, certainly we who have been trained in all⁸ that is good ought to be moved by their songs.

1 "systematic training" = *ratio* *ac* *disciplina*.

2 "have shown themselves" = *exsistō*.

3 "is confined to" = is of.

4 = real, true.

5 *Quid?*

6 Express the idea of this clause by a temporal clause.

7 Express by a relative clause; see 71, 7.

8 "all that is good" = all the best things.

443

CHAPTER IX

If many nations claimed Homer as their citizen even after his death, certainly we should not reject this poet while he is living, one who has devoted much of his time to the celebration of Roman wars and victories. We like¹ to hear those who speak in our praise. This man has written about the Mithridatic war, about our achievements² in the Pontus under the command of Lucullus, and about the rescue³ of Cyzicus from the destruction of war. Certainly, then, it would not be to our credit not to accept as a citizen a man whose writings have adorned not only our generals, but also the whole Roman people.

444

CHAPTER X

Do not think it is a disadvantage⁴ to us, judges, that Archias uses the Greek language, for I would call your attention to the fact that Greek is read far more widely than Latin, and that, therefore, if⁵ this man is the herald of our glory, our deeds will penetrate to the uttermost parts of the earth. The greatest generals have always bestowed especial honor upon poets and writers, for the greater a man is the more he is influenced by the desire for glory. Who would have heard of Achilles, had he not had Homer to proclaim his deeds? When Sulla was in Spain, he gave a reward to a poet of little⁶ worth who had written a short poem in his honor, but he told him not to write any more. I suppose he would have refused Archias, if he had asked him for the citizenship.

¹ "We like to hear" = we hear most gladly.

² Avoid the use of a single noun.

³ Cf. *ab urbe conditā* = from the founding of the city. ⁴ See 37.

⁵ "if . . . glory"—abl. absolute. ⁶ "of little worth" = *malus*.

445

CHAPTER XI

It must be admitted that all ¹ good men wish to be praised. If this were not the case, would those philosophers who write treatises on the contempt of glory inscribe their names to their books? I confess that I would have desired no other reward for the dangers that I underwent in your behalf than that this man should have written the history ² of my consulship. If we did not all have a certain manly quality to arouse us to labor, what ³ reason would we have to toil and worry ourselves about the numerous cares of life?

446

CHAPTER XII

Surely we who are engaged in public life ought not to seem so narrow-minded ⁴ as to think that after death we shall cease to remember what we have done in life. The most distinguished men have been exceedingly careful ⁵ to leave behind them a statue that would represent to the living the form and features of the dead; should we not much more desire to leave to posterity a sketch of our purposes and virtues prepared by men of the greatest ability? For these reasons, gentlemen of the jury, I entreat you to ⁶ preserve in your number this man who is already a citizen of Rome by law, and whose virtue and ability are attested by many witnesses.

¹ "all good men" = *optimus quisque*.

² *rēs*.

³ "what . . . toil" — cf. in text, *quid est quod . . . exerceāmus*.

⁴ See 29.

⁵ "exceedingly . . . leave" = desired with the greatest care to leave.

⁶ Do not use the infinitive.

THE ORATION FOR MARCELLUS

447

CHAPTERS I AND II

Cicero said that the mercy and magnanimity of Caesar forced him to break his customary¹ silence and to speak once more before the senate. The restoration of Marcellus was very pleasing to Cicero, for he was deeply pained that his companion in study and in public life was not allowed in Rome with him. The fact that Caesar has pardoned Marcellus is an omen of good for the future, since by this act Caesar has shown his ability² and willingness² to subordinate all personal considerations to the welfare of the state. Your achievements, Caesar, so far excel those of any other hero that eloquence³ cannot fitly describe them. And yet the glory of this deed far outshines all your victories, for the reason that this honor belongs to you alone, while the credit for winning battles must be shared with the soldiers and with fortune.

448

CHAPTERS III AND IV

Your triumphs in war, magnificent as they are,⁴ were such as could be won by force of arms,⁵ but this triumph over resentment and suspicion, over your feelings and personal power, can be gained only by the spirit that makes men

¹ Express this word by a clause.

² Do not use a noun.

³ verba.

⁴ "as they are" — need this be expressed?

⁵ "force of arms" = force and arms.

like the gods. Your victories on the field of battle will always command attention, but your qualities of mind will inspire the love of all mankind. Time will destroy the memorials of your victories in battle, but one who has acted generously and wisely in a moment of anger will never fade from the hearts of men. You have not only surpassed all other leaders in the civil war, but you have even shown yourself superior to victory itself, for you have given back to the vanquished the very things that they hoped to secure when the war was begun.

449 CHAPTERS V AND VI

The restoration of Marcellus is especially significant as¹ indicating how Caesar regards² those who opposed him in the contest with Pompey. And that Caesar would have avoided war, if he could, is attested by the fact that he showed so much kindness to Marcellus and myself, who both favored peace. Caesar's rival, if victorious, would have been cruel, and heaven apparently has made all hope of security depend on the gentleness and wisdom of the one who was the conqueror. Therefore I urge you to rejoice in the exercise of those noble qualities, because victories are not given us for all time by fortune, while magnanimity is a boon from heaven. Don't cease to show us that you are always master of yourself.

450 CHAPTERS VII AND VIII

Now may I be allowed to refer to your fear that your life will be in danger. Who could harbor³ so dreadful a

¹ What idea does this convey?

² "how . . . those" = what feelings Caesar has toward those.

³ "harbor" = hold.

purpose? Surely none of your friends. And yet you have no foes, for those who were hostile to you have been made your warmest friends by your magnanimity. But let us magnify the danger in order to increase our watchfulness, since on the preservation of your life depends the safety of all. The country is prostrate, and you alone can quicken all its interests. For this reason I shudder when I think of your statement that you have lived long enough as¹ far as years and glory are concerned. To be sure, you have won renown beyond that of all other men; but, to reach the highest point of fame that lies within your reach, you have yet to lift up this prostrate nation.

451 CHAPTERS IX, X, AND XI

In addition to your victories and the restoration of your enemies, you have still to restore the republic. When all this² has been accomplished, then, perhaps, some one may say you have lived enough. The years of your life will not all be spent here, for there will be nobody who will be born a hundred years hence who will not know the splendid qualities of your life. Our welfare and that of our descendants is bound up in your life; we offer to sacrifice our lives in the preservation of yours if occasion arises. In conclusion, I wish to express something of the gratitude that I and my associates feel for your generosity and magnanimity. For my own part, I am particularly grateful for your kindness to me personally in³ the restoration of my dear friend Marcellus.

¹ "as . . . concerned" = for years and glory.

² Use the relative. What should its position be?

³ "in the . . . Marcellus" — ablative absolute.

THE ORATION FOR LIGARIUS

452

CHAPTERS I AND II

A strange charge is brought against Ligarius, — that he was in Africa. Pansa has admitted the truthfulness of the accusation; therefore I am in a dilemma,¹ for I had expected that I would have to prove this fact to Caesar. There is, then, nothing for me to do but to plead for mercy. The defendant confesses, Tubero, that he joined the same party to which you and your father belonged. When Considius left Africa to return to Rome, all the provincials² requested him to appoint Ligarius to serve in his place. At the outbreak of war, Pompey's friends in Africa urged Ligarius to take command of the forces in Pompey's interests, but he steadily refused. Afterward Varus went to Africa and assumed control. The fact that Ligarius remained in the province had nothing whatever to do with the war, — his stay there was due to necessity, not to choice.

453

CHAPTERS III AND IV

Of my own free will I favored Pompey, but at the close of the war received a full pardon at the hands of that noble man before whom I speak. Tubero and his father deliberately espoused the cause of Pompey, and fought with him, yet they were freely pardoned by Caesar. And now we

¹ Do not use a noun. Consider the real meaning of this word. ² See 71, 7.

appear before our magnanimous conqueror, the one to defend, the other to accuse, a man who did the very thing that you, Tubero, wished to do yourself, but could not. Your desire¹ to keep him in exile is exceedingly cruel, for you thus deprive him not only of his country, home, and brothers, but almost of his very life.

454 CHAPTERS V AND VI

Tubero, you are a man of such virtue, learning, and kindness that I cannot understand why you wish to oppose² the pardon of Ligarius. There are some people who, after a victor has been kind toward them, do not wish anybody else to be pardoned. If you had always been friendly to Caesar yourself, you would have some reason³ for urging him not to pardon Ligarius. It is strange that he should be accused rather than others, that the accusation should come from one who fought on the same side, and that there should be any new charge to bring against him. He may be called unfortunate, but he does not deserve to be called criminal any more than you or I do.

455 CHAPTERS VII, VIII, IX

Tubero's complaint against Ligarius was that he did not receive him into the province. If Tubero had secured control of Africa, do you not think he would have handed it over to Pompey? Nobody can doubt that he would have done so, for as soon as Ligarius was prevented from landing in Africa, he went off to Pompey, and not to Caesar. And

¹ Express the idea by a clause.

² "oppose the pardon," cf. in text, *nē impetrēmus oppūgnābis*.

³ "have some reason for" = have why you should.

yet, in spite of these services, Pompey was lukewarm¹ in his attachment to Tubero. May it not be true that resentment² for a fancied² personal injury influenced Tubero to take this action against Ligarius?

456

CHAPTERS X, XI, XII

Although there are extenuating³ circumstances, yet the entire case rests with Caesar's forgiving spirit. I beg of you, Caesar, to remember how many friends you would please by the restoration⁴ of Ligarius. Take into consideration also the grief of these brothers, who are so closely attached to that one in exile. And do not forget the service which Titus Ligarius rendered you, and the fact that the restoration⁴ of the exiled brother would bind them all closely to you. As in the case of Marcellus, you have an opportunity to exercise those qualities that have led men to consider you almost divine.

¹ Cf. *languidiore studiō*.

² Recast this entire sentence.

³ Consider the real meaning of this expression, and express the idea in Latin.

⁴ Ablative absolute.

EXERCISES FOR GENERAL REVIEW

457

[Review sections 1-51.]

1. He was a man of great bravery, and yet in many matters he showed too little foresight. 2. When he needed money, he could always persuade his father. 3. I will have lasting friendship with you, if you will use your influence in my behalf. 4. My brother and sister were worthy of very great praise for their wisdom. 5. The enemy advanced five miles farther than we did. 6. We were deprived of provisions, because we remained there many days. 7. When Cicero had been elected consul, he performed his duties very boldly. 8. After we came to Rome, they demanded many favors¹ of us. 9. He put me in charge of fortifications that were many miles long. 10. I am thoroughly ashamed of her, because she is not skillful in such matters. 11. He was pardoned when we found that the book was not very valuable. 12. Your weapons were like mine, and were very useful to me.

458

[Review sections 58-96.]

1. The people I saw in Athens were his friends. 2. Each of us enjoys his own friends, but not those of other people. 3. Cicero took as much time for study as other men do for pleasure. 4. After Caesar had fortified the camp and encouraged his men, he waited for² the enemy to attack him. 5. All the bravest soldiers fought in different parts of the battle, although many had been killed in doing so.³ 6. You will not set out to accomplish this with a youth for a leader, will you? 7. Having finished matters at Rome, Caesar left the city for the purpose of engaging Pompey's forces. 8. Did you

¹ Omit.

² See 156, 2.

³ id.

believe me when I told you that ? No. 9. There have been two citizens famous in Rome, one of whom conquered provinces, the other preserved the city. 10. This is a very easy thing to do, is it not ? 11. You ought to come, if anybody calls you. 12. Hannibal, having drawn¹ the Romans into an ambush, surrounded and killed a large number of them.

459

[Review sections 102-136.]

1. Do not fear the enemy ; let us remember that Caesar is our leader. 2. Caesar told the Gauls that they might enjoy their own laws. 3. I have no doubt that Caesar would have pardoned more of his enemies, had he lived longer. 4. We ought to obey the laws of our country. (Express in three ways.) 5. Ought we not to have praised him for his courage ? 6. Some one may hesitate to ask us where we are going. 7. We have had a residence at Rome for a long time. 8. If the letters should contain nothing new, should² we blame Cicero for his zeal and prudence ? 9. What could I do, when my father told me what he saw ? 10. Would that a more skillful leader were in charge of the fortifications, now that they have been finished ! 11. If every soldier does not do his duty, I fear that we shall not be victorious. 12. Had Caesar been cruel by nature, he would have killed many of his enemies after the defeat of Pompey.

460

[Review sections 141-175.]

1. The senate voted not to follow Caesar's opinion, but to put the conspirators to death. 2. Catiline could not prevent Cicero from disclosing all his plans. 3. Pompey was not greedy enough to order³ the houses of the allies to be plundered. 4. Cicero called the senate together to lay before them Catiline's plans. 5. Cicero advised Catiline to leave the city if he wished to free the consul from fear. 6. For many years Caesar prevented the Germans from

¹ inducō. ² Consider carefully the real meaning of this auxiliary. ³ Use iubeō.

invading Italy. 7. When Caesar ordered¹ the enemy to give hostages, they used to obey. 8. The general said, "Wait until you see the whites² of their eyes." 9. The Germans were so thoroughly frightened that they did not stop fleeing until they came to the Rhine. 10. I think the Helvetians would not have emigrated, had they known how powerful Caesar was. 11. They were punished for³ trying to burn the city. 12. We will thank Cicero for persuading Catiline to go into exile. 13. Cicero was the only man who was fit to be consul at such a crisis. 14. He sent a messenger to order the enemy to surrender. 15. He said he would wait for the arrival⁴ of his friends.

461. At their interview Caesar showed Ariovistus that he was kindly disposed toward him; yet he could not allow him to wage war on the Aedui, who were allies of the Roman people. Ariovistus replied that, since he had crossed the Rhine only on invitation, and had then been attacked by the Gauls, there was no reason why⁵ they should not pay their taxes now that they had been defeated. Certainly the friendship of the Roman people ought not to prevent him from having what is justly his. If he was the first to come into Gaul, the Roman people had no business there; therefore if they desired his friendship and help in any wars they wished to wage, they must lead their army out of that part of Gaul at once. Caesar refused to obey Ariovistus, and in the battle that followed Ariovistus was severely defeated.

462. From the numerous battles that Caesar fought with the Gauls, one⁶ can easily understand how skillful he was in military affairs. He would⁷ march so rapidly and appear so unexpectedly among those who were meditating revolt, that they had no opportunity of perfecting their arrangements. On one occasion the Veneti, who live along the seacoast, realizing that Caesar had no fleet,

¹ Use *imperō*.

³ Use a relative clause.

⁶ Do not use *ūnus*.

² "whites . . . eyes" = their very eyes.

⁴ Do not use a noun.

⁵ *quā rē*.

⁷ What does this auxiliary mean?

felt sure that they could raise¹ the standard of revolt and prevent the Romans from ruling them any longer. But Caesar quickly sent his officers in different directions to hold the other Gauls to their allegiance,² and then collected a fleet with which to fight the Veneti. He found that the ships of the Veneti were so strong that the Romans could not injure them by their customary³ methods, so he ordered his men to seize their rigging with long poles and thus board their ship. These tactics⁴ were very useful to the Romans, and enabled them to capture the enemy's ships one by one.

463. During the consulship of Cicero, a senator named Catiline formed a plan to destroy the government, and persuaded several men of noble birth to join with him. But Cicero was on the lookout to see that the republic suffered no harm, and knew where his associates in crime met and what plans they adopted. He therefore called the senate together to lay the whole matter before them. The result was that the citizens were so enraged that they would have driven Catiline from the city, had he not left that very night of his own accord. There is no patriotic citizen who will not acknowledge that Cicero should be accorded the highest praise for disclosing such a foul conspiracy.

464. Although Catiline had left Rome, it would have been a difficult matter to secure evidence against those conspirators who remained, if a most fortunate occurrence had not happened. Cicero was informed that certain ambassadors from the Allobroges, who had come to Rome at this time, were being urged by the conspirators to incite an insurrection in Gaul. So Cicero asked the ambassadors to secure letters from the conspirators in their own handwriting. As the Gauls were leaving Rome, they were arrested, and these very letters, with unbroken seals, were seized as proofs of the conspirators' guilt. A few days later the senate was assembled,

¹ "raise . . . revolt" = make a rebellion.

² Express this adjective by a clause in Latin.

³ officium.

⁴ rēs.

and after a long consultation they voted that the conspirators who remained in the city should be put to death.

465. Before Caesar set out from Rome the Helvetians decided to burn all their villages (*vici*) and abandon their country because they were being hard pressed by the Germans. But as soon as Caesar was informed of this design,¹ he hastened from the city, and after gathering as large an army as possible, pitched his camp near Geneva (*Genava*), in order to prevent the Helvetians from crossing the Rhone (*Rhodanus*) into the Roman province. Then the Helvetians sent envoys to Caesar and said, "We desire to journey through the province without causing any injury, and we ask that we may be allowed to do this with your good will." [Yale, 1900.]

466. Render into Latin the following:—

When Cicero, according to custom, ascended the rostra on the last day of the year to give an account to the people of the events of his consulship, Metellus forbade him to speak. "The man," he said, "who condemned our fellow-citizens unheard, shall not himself be listened to." Then Cicero cried out, "I declare that I have saved the republic and the city." The people applauded, and with one voice responded that he had spoken the truth.

He was never able to persuade his brother to go to Rome.

The consul did not know what plan to adopt.

Caesar was killed March fifteenth.

Write the following passage in indirect discourse introduced by *Cicero locutus est*:—

Vos, Quirites, quoniam iam nox est, venerati Jovem in vestra tecta discedite; et ea, quamquam iam est periculum depulsum, tamen aequae ac priore nocte custodiis vigiliisque defendite. Id ne vobis diutius faciendum sit, atque ut in perpetua pace esse possitis, providebo. [Wellesley, 1901.]

¹ Omit.

467. In the consulship of Cicero, Catiline collected a band of worthless men to destroy the Roman commonwealth. When Cicero saw that the conspirators had established a camp in Etruria, and that the number of the enemy grew every day, and that the state was in the greatest danger, he begged of the senators to decree that the consuls should see (to it) that the state should suffer no harm. By this speech he brought it about (*efficere*) that Catiline left Rome and went to the camp of Manlius, which was at Faesulae. This he would not have done if he had not seen that all his plans had been revealed (to be revealed = *patere*). [Yale, 1901.]

468. 1. When he had finished the war with the Germans, Caesar thought that for many reasons he ought to go to Rome. But he wished first to cross the Rhine before other Germans had crossed over into Gaul, because he had heard that a body had set out to take possession of the left bank, and they would harass the Gauls if they were allowed to do this.

2. Do we seem to be so mean-spirited, all of us who have passed our lives in the service of the state, that when up to the very end we have not drawn a calm breath, we should think that all things are going to perish along with us? Have other men left statues, the likeness of the body and not of the soul, and ought we not much rather to leave a remembrance of our virtue? [Princeton, 1900.]

469. Although only a small part of the summer was left, Caesar determined to cross into Britain, for he had observed that in nearly all the wars with the Gauls aid had been furnished to the enemy by the inhabitants of that island. Since, however, he could learn nothing from the Gauls about the nature of the island and of its people, and was afraid that some misfortune might happen to him if he acted incautiously, he sent a lieutenant to find out all he could about that portion of Britain which was nearest to Gaul.

In the meantime Caesar gathered together about eighty ships in which to carry across the troops if a favorable report was made by

his lieutenant. When after five days this officer had returned and reported all that he had seen, Caesar at once set sail with two legions of infantry and ordered the cavalry to follow with all possible speed.

The cavalry, however, waited more than five days before setting out, and then proceeded so slowly that one battle had already been fought with the enemy before they came within sight of Caesar and the infantry. [Harvard, 1897.]

470. Caesar, knowing that the enemy were near, gave orders that six legions in light marching order should precede the baggage and fortify the camp. The Nervii supposed that each legion would arrive followed by its own baggage. If the Romans had come to the river in this fashion, they would have been defeated; but the Nervii waited until they caught sight of the first baggage train, and by that time there were so many soldiers on the hill that the Romans were not overpowered by the first rush. Yet even so one cannot doubt that Caesar's difficulties were great. He saw that his cavalry had been routed, and that the barbarians were rushing from the forest to the river. There was no time to send a staff officer to tell the soldiers what to do. But, well trained as they were by previous campaigning, the soldiers knew their duty. [Harvard, 1900.]

471. The Spartans, getting wind of the conspiracy, recalled Pausanias; but, being unable to find any clear proofs, acquitted him on the capital charge, while punishing him by a fine. When, however, he continued to correspond with the Persians, he was detected in the following manner. A slave who was sent to Persia, and who had noticed that none of those dispatched on like errands ever returned, feared that if he obeyed his master's injunctions he should meet with death. He therefore delivered the letter to the ephors, and afterward, in a conference, forced Pausanias to confess his crime so plainly that the ephors, who were concealed near by and heard the confession, were able to arrest this disloyal citizen. [Harvard, 1899.]

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

NOTE.— Words in SMALL CAPITALS are synonyms of the first word given.

A

abandon, *relinquō, ere, liqui, lictus*,
LEAVE BEHIND; *abiciō, icere, icī,*
iectus, THROW FROM OR AWAY.
ability, *ingenium, ī, n.*
able, am able, *possum, posse, potuī.*
about, around, *circum*, prep. w. acc.;
about, *circiter*, adv., used w. numer-
als; about, concerning, *dē* w. abl.
absent, *absēns*, gen. *absēntis*.
accept, *accipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptus*.
accomplish, *cōficiō, ere, feci, factus*.
accord, his own accord, *suā sponte*.
account, on account of, *propter, ob*,
preps. w. acc.
accuse, *accūsō, āre, āvi, ātus*.
accustomed, be accustomed, *soleō,*
ēre, solitus sum; cōsuēsco, ere,
suēvi, suētus.
acknowledge, *cōfiteor, ēri, cōfessus*
sum.
across, *trāns*, prep. w. acc.
adopt, *īnsistō, ere, stiti, —; capiō, ere,*
cēpi, captus; īstituō, ere, stitu,
stitutus. See use.
advance, *prōgredior, gredī, gressus*
sum.
advise, *moneō, ēre, uī, itus; suādeō,*
ēre, suāsī, suāsus.
Aedui, *Aeduī, ōrum*, m. pl.
affair, *rēs, reī*, f.
afraid, be afraid of, *timeō, ēre, uī*.—
See fear.
after, *postquam*, conj.

against, *in, contrā*, preps. w. acc.
aid, *auxilium, ī, n.; iuvō, āre, iūvi,*
iūtus.
alarm, *commoveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus*.
Alexander, *Alexander, drī, m.*
alive, be alive, be living, *vivō, ere,*
vixi, vīctus.
all, *omnis, e*, EVERY, THE WHOLE,
ENTIRE, pl., ALL (persons), ALL
(things); *tōtus, a, um*, ALL THE, THE
WHOLE, ENTIRE, TOTAL; *ūniversus,*
a, um, ALL (taken together),
WHOLE, ENTIRE, UNIVERSAL; *cuncti,*
ae, a, ALL (united in a body), ALL
TOGETHER.
allow, *patior, ī, passus sum; licet, ēre,*
licuit or *licitum est*, used imperson-
ally.
ally, *socius, ī, m.*
almost, *prope*, adv.
alone, *sōlus, a, um*.
already, *iam*, adv.
also, *et, etiam*.
although, *quamquam, quamvis, cum,*
conj. See 171. 87. 6.
always, *semper*, adv.
am, *sum, esse, fui, futurus*.
ambassador, *lēgātus, ī, m.*
among, *inter*, prep. w. acc.; *in*, prep.
w. abl. and acc.
ancestors, *māiorēs, um*, m. pl.
and, *et, -que, ac* or *atque*, conj. See 82.
angry, be angry with, *irāscor, ī, irā-*
tus sum, w. dat.

announce, *nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
another, *alius, a, ud.*
answer, *respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus.*
any, anybody, any one, anything, *aliquis*; in a negative sentence, *ullus*; after *sī, nisi, nē*, and *num, quis*.
apologize, *satisfaciō, ere, fēcī, factus.*
approach, *appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus*, COME NEAR TO, DRAW NIGH, w. dat.; *adeō, adīre, aāvī* or *adiī, adītus*, GO TO, VISIT, w. acc.
arise, *coōrior, īri, ortus sum.*
arm one's self, passive of *armō, āre, āvī, ātus*; *arma capiō, ere, cēpī, captus.*
arms, *arma, ōrum*, n. pl.
army, *exercitus, ūs*, m.
around, about, *circum*, w. acc.
arrest, *comprehendō, ere,prehendī,prehēsus.*
arrival, *adventus, ūs*, m.
arrive, *perveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus.*
as much . . . as, *tantus . . . quantus, a, um; tam . . . quam.*
as soon as, *simul ac (atque); cum primum.*
as soon as possible, *quam primum*, adv.
ashamed, something causes one to be ashamed, *puget, pudēre, pūduit, or pūdītum est.* See 27.
ask, *rogō, āre, āvī, ātus*; ask advice of, *cōsulō, ere, cōsulūī, cōsultus*, w. acc.; ask for, demand, *postulō, āre, āvī, ātus*, w. acc.; *quaerō, ere, sīvī, sītus; poscō, petō.* See 15.
Aspasia, *Aspasia, ae, f.*
assault, make an assault, *signa īnferō, īnferre, īntulī, illātus*; to make an assault on the enemy, *in hostīs signa īnferre.*

assemble, *conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus.*
at all, *omninō*, adv.
at the house of, *apud*, prep. w. acc.
Athenians, *Athēniēnsēs, ium*, m. pl.
Athens, *Athēnae, ārum*, f. pl.
attack, *impetum faciō, facere, fecī, factus*; *ingredior, ingredi, ingressus sum*; to attack the enemy, *in hostēs impetum facere.*
attempt, *cōnor, arī, ātus sum.*
avoid, *vītō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

B

band, company, *manus, ūs*, f.
battle, *proelium, ī, n.*; *pūgna, ae, f.*
be born, descended, *nāscor, ī, nātus sum.*
be without, be deprived of, *careō, ēre, ūi, itus.*
bear, *ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus*; bear with, *perfero, ferre, tulī, lātus.*
because, *quod, quia, quoniam*, conjs. See 173.
become, be made, *fīō, fierī, factus sum.*
before, *ante*, prep. w. acc.; *antequam, priusquam*, conjs.; the night before, *superiōre nocte.*
beg, beg for, *orō, āre, āvī, ātus; petō, ere, īvī* or *itī, itus.*
began, *coepī* or *coeptus sum, coepisse*, defective verb; *coeptus sum* is only used with passive infinitives.
begin, *incipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus*; begin a battle, *proelium committō, ere, mīsī, missus.*
behalf, in behalf of, *prō*, w. abl.
Belgians, *Belgae, ārum*, m. pl.
believe, *crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditurus.*
besiege, *oppūgnō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
betake one's self, *sē cōnferre; cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, collātus.*

betray, *prōdō, ere, didī, ditus*.
bid (at an auction), *liceor, licērī, licētus sum*.

bind, *vinciō, ire, vinxi, vinctus*.

blame, *culpō, āre, āvī, ātus*.

blood, *sanguis, sanguinis, m*.

board, board ship, *transcendō, ere, aī, —, in nāvem*.

boat, *linter, lintris, f.; nāvis, is, f*.

body, *corpus, corporis, n*.

boldness, *audācia, ae, f*.

born, be born, *nāscor, ī, nātus sum*.

book, *liber, librī, m*.

both . . . and, *et . . . et*.

bound, be bounded, pass. of *contineō, ēre, uī, ntus*.

boy, *puer, ī, m*.

brave, *fortis, e; audāx, ācis*.

bravely, *fortiter, audacter, advs*.

bravery, *virtūs, ūtis, f*.

bridge, *pōns, pontis, m*.

brother, *frāter, frātris, m*.

building, *tēcta, ōrum, n.; aedificium, ī, n*.

burn, burn up, *combūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstus*; burn alive, *īgnī cremō, I*.

business, *negōtium, ī, n*.

but, *sed, autem*; but if, *sīn, conjs*.

buy, *emō, ere, emī, ēmptus*.

by, *ā, ab, prep. w. abl*.

C

Caesar, *Caesar, aris, m*.

call, *appellō, āre, āvī, ātus*, ADDRESS, CALL BY NAME, ENTITLE; *nominō, āre, āvī, ātus*, NAME, CALL by name; *convocō, āre, āvī, ātus*, SUMMON, CALL together.

camp, *castra, ōrum, n. pl*.

can, *possum, posse, potuī*; can not but, *facere nōn possum quīn, w. subj*.

capture, *capīō, capere, cēpī, captus*.

care, *cūra, ae, f*.

care for, *provideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, w. dat*.

carefully, *diligenter, adv*.

Catiline, *Catilina, ae, m*.

cattle, *pecus, oris, n*.

cause, *causa, ae, f*.

cavalry, *equitātus, ūs, m.; eques, itis, m. (pl.)*.

cease, *dēsīnō, ere, īvī or īī, itus*.

certainly, *certē, adv*.

children, *liberī, ōrum, m. pl*.

choose, *aēligō, ere, lēgī, lēctus*.

Cicero, *Cicero, ōnis, m*.

citizen, *civis, is, m. and f*.

city, *urbs, urbis, f*.

collect, *colligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctus*.

come, *veniō, ire, vēnī, ventus*.

command, *imperō, āre, āvī, ātus, w. dat.; iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus*; be in command of, *praesum, esse, fuī*.

commander, *imperātor, ōris, m*.

companion, ally, *socius, ī, m.; comes, itis, m. and f*.

compare, *comparō, āre, āvī, ātus*.

compel, *cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus; compellō, ere, pulī, pulsus*.

complain, complain of, *queror, ī, questus sum*.

conceal, *cēlō, āre, āvī, ātus*.

conquer, *vincō, ere, vīcī, victus*.

conspiracy, *coniūrātīō, ōnis, f*.

conspirators, *coniūrātī, ōrum, m. pl*.

consul, *cōsul, ulis, m*.

consult, *cōnsulō, ere, cōnsulū, cōnsultus, w. acc.; w. dat., consult for, consult the interests of*.

contain. See hold.

control, *imperium, ī, n*.

converse, *colloquor, loquī, locūtus sum*.

convince. See persuade.

Corinth, *Corinthus*, *ī*, f.
country, *terra*, *ae*, f., LAND, EARTH, COUNTRY; *patria*, *ae*, f., NATIVE COUNTRY, FATHERLAND; *rūs*, *rūris*, n., COUNTRY as opposed to city; into the country, *rūs*; in the country, *rūrī*.
courage, bravery, *virtūs*, *ūtis*, f.; *audācia*, *ae*, f.
covetous, *avidus*, *a*, *um*.
cowardly, *īgnāvus*, *a*, *um*.
Crassus, *Crassus*, *ī*, m.
crime, *scelus*, *eris*, n.
critical point, crisis, *discrīmen*, *inīs*, n.
cross, *transeō*, *īre*, *īvī* or *īī*, *itus*.
cruel, *crūdēlis*, *e*.

D

danger, *periculum*, *ī*, n.
dare, *audeō*, *ēre*, *ausus sum*.
day, *dies*, *ēī*, m. and f.; to-day, *hodīe*; yesterday, *hesternō diē*.
dear, *cārus*, *a*, *um*.
death, *mors*, *mortis*, f.; put to death, *neceō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
decree, *aēcernō*, *ere*, *crēvī*, *crētus*; decree of the senate, *senātus consultum*, *ī*, n.
deed, *factum*, *ī*, n.
deep, *altus*, *a*, *um*.
defeat, conquer, *vincō*, *ere*, *vīcī*, *victus*.
defend, *dēfendō*, *ere*, *fendī*, *fēnsus*.
defendant, *reus*, *ī*, m.
delay, *moror*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.
deliberate, *dēliberō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
demand, *postulō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*. See 15.
democrats, *populārēs*, *ium*, m.
denies, says not, *negō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
depart, *dīscēdō*, *ere*, *cessī*, *cessūrus*; *dēcēdō*, *ere*, *cessī*, *cessūrus*.

deprive, *ēripīō*, *ripere*, *ripuī*, *reptus*; *prīvō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; be deprived of, lack, *careō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itūrus*. See 39.

depth, *altitudō*, *inīs*, f.

desert, abandon, forsake, *aēserō*, *serere*, *seruī*, *sertus*. See abandon.

desire, *volō*, *velle*, *voluī*.

destroy, *dēleō*, *ēre*, *ēvī*, *ētus*.

destruction, *exitium*, *ī*, n., A GOING OUT, GOING TO NOUGHT, RUIN; *interitus*, *ūs*, m., A GOING AMONG things so as to be no longer seen, BECOMING LOST, GOING TO RUIN; *perniciēs*, *ēī*, f., KILLING UTTERLY, SLAUGHTER, OVERTHROW, DESTRUCTION; *interneciō*, *ōnis*, f., destruction, ANNIHILATION.

determine, *cōstituō*, *ere*, *uī*, *ūtus*.

devastate, *vastō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.

die, *moriōr*, *morī*, *mortuus sum*.

differ, *differō*, *differre*, *distulī*, *dilatū*.

difficult, *difficilis*, *e*.

diligently, *diligenter*, adv.

diminish, *aēminuō*, *ere*, *aēminuī*, *dēminūtus*.

direction, *pars*, *partis*, f.

disaster, *calamitās*, *ātis*, f.

disclose. See *expose*.

disregard, neglect (advice), *omittō*, *mītere*, *mīsī*, *missus*.

district, territory, field, *ager*, *agrī*, m.

do, *faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*.

doubt, *dubiō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*; there is no doubt that, *nōn est dubium quīn*, w. subj.

doubtful, *dubius*, *a*, *um*.

drive away, *aēpellō*, *ere*, *aēpulī*, *dēpulsus*; drive out, *expellō*, *ere*, *expulī*, *expulsus*; *ēiciō*, *ere*, *ēīcī*, *ēiectus*.

duty, *officium*, *ī*, n.
 dwell, dwell in, *incolō*, *ere*, *coluī*,
cultus; *inhabitō*, *ī*.
 dwelling, *domicilium*, *ī*, n.

E

each, *quisque*.
 each other. See 68.
 eagerly, *cupidē*, adv.
 earth, *orbis terrārum*, *orbis terrae*;
orbis, *is*, m.
 easily, *facile*, adv.
 easy, *facilis*, *e*, adj.
 either . . . or, *aut . . . aut*, *vel . . . vel*.
 elect, *creō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
 embassy, *lēgatiō*, *ōnis*, f.
 emigrate = go out from territory.
 enable, *efficiō*, *ere*, *fēcī*, *fectus*.
 encourage, *cohortor*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*,
 EXHORT, ANIMATE, ADMONISH;
cōsōlor, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, COMFORT
 GREATLY, CHEER.
 end, *fīnis*, *is*, m.
 enemy, *hostis*, *is*. m. and f., AN EN-
 EMY OF ONE'S COUNTRY, *inimīcus*, *ī*,
 m., A PERSONAL ENEMY.
 engage. See **fight**.
 enjoy, *fruor*, *frui*, *fructus sum*; en-
 joy, use, *utor*, *ūtī*, *ūtus*. See 44.
 enjoyment, *fructus*, *ūs*, m.
 enough, *satis*.
 especially, *praesertim*, adv.
 establish, *cōstituō*, *ere*, *uī*, *ūtus*.
 Europe, *Eurōpa*, *ae*, f.
 even if, *etiam sī*.
 ever, *semper*, ALWAYS; *unquam* (*un-
 quam*), AT ANY TIME.
 every, each, *quisque*; every one, *quis-
 que*, *quaeque*, *quodque* (*quicque*,
quidque).
 evidence, *indiciū*, *ī*, n.

except, *praeter*, prep. w. acc.
 exchange, *inter*. and reflex. pronoun,
dō, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*.
 execute, perform, *administrō*, *āre*, *āvī*,
ātus.
 exhort, *cohortor*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.
 exile, *exsilium*, *ī*, n.
 expect, hope for, *spērō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
 expose, bring to light, *patefaciō*, *ere*,
fēcī, *factus*; expose (to danger),
offerō, *offerre*, *obtulī*, *oblātus*.
 eye, *oculus*, *ī*, m.

F

fact, *rēs*, *reī*, f.
 faithful, *fidēlis*, *e*.
 fair, *pulcher*, *pulchra*, *pulchrum*.
 fame, *gloria*, *ae*, f.
 family (*i.e.* stock), *genus*, *eris*, n.;
gēns, *ntis*, f.
 famous, *clārus*, *a*, *um*.
 far, *longē*, adv.
 farmer, *agricola*, *ae*, m.
 father, *pater*, *patris*, m.
 fault, *culpa*, *ae*, f.
 fear, *timor*, *ōris*, m.; *metus*, *ūs*, m.;
 to fear, *vereor*, *ērī*, *itus sum*; *timeō*,
ēre, *uī*; *metuō*, *ere*, *metuī*, *metūtus*.
 feel thankful, *gratiam habeō*, *ēre*, *uī*,
itus.
 fellow = man, sometimes by *ille*.
 fellow-citizen, *cīvis*, *is*, m.
 fertile, *opīmus*, *a*, *um*; *fertilis*, *e*.
 few, *paucī*, *ae*, *a*.
 field, *ager*, *agrī*, m.; in the field, *mīli-
 tiae* (loc. case).
 fifteen, *quīndecim*, indecl.
 fifty, *quīnquāgintā*, indecl.
 fight, *pūgnō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, used im-
 personally in the passive; e.g. *pūg-
 nātum*, it is fought, they fight.

- find**, *inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus*, COME UPON, DISCOVER; *reperiō, ire, reperī* and *repperī, repertus*, MEET WITH, FIND OUT; *cōgnōscō, ere, cōgnōvī, cōgnitus*, BECOME ACQUAINTED WITH, LEARN, KNOW.
- finish**, *cōnficiō, ficere, fēcī, factus*.
- first**, *prīmus, a, um*.
- fit**, fitted, *aptus, a, um; idōneus, a, um*.
- five**, *quīnque*, indecl.
- flee**, *fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitus; terga vertō, ere, vertī, versus*.
- fleet**, *classis, is, f*.
- flight**, *fuga, ae, f*; put to flight, in *fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus; fugō, āre, āvī, ātus*.
- flow**, *fluō, ere, fluxī, fluxus*.
- follow**, follow close after, *subsequor, ī, secūtus sum*.
- following**, *posterus, a, um*. See 59. 3.
- foolish**, stupid, *āmēns, gen. āmentis; stultus, a, um*.
- foot**, *pēs, pedis, m*.
- for**, *prō*, prep. w. abl.; *nam*, conj.; for a long time, now for a long time, *iam diū, iam dudum*. See 102. 3; 103. 2.
- for the future**, in *reliquum tempus*.
- for the most part**, *māximam partem*.
- for the sake of**, *causā*, abl. and placed after its limiting gen.
- force**, *vīs, vis, f*; force, band, *manus, ūs, f*; forces, troops, *cōpiae, ārum, f. pl*.
- foresight**, *prūdentia, ae, f*.
- forest**, *silva, ae, f*.
- forget**, *oblīviscor, ī, oblītus sum*.
- form**, make, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus*; form, draw up, *instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus*.
- former**, *ille*.
- fortifications**, *moenia, ium, n*.
- fortify**, *mūniō, ire, ūvī, ūtus*.
- found**, build (a city), *condō, ere, condidī, conditus*.
- four**, *quattuor*, indecl.
- free**, set free, *liberō, āre, āvī, ātus*; free, *liber, libera, liberum*.
- friend**, *amicus, ī, m*.
- frighten thoroughly**, *perterreō, ēre, uī, ūtus*.
- from**, out of, *ē, ex*, prep. w. abl.; from, away from, from near, *ā, ab, abs*, prep. w. abl.; *dē*, down from.
- front**, first, *prīmus, a, um*.
- full**, *plēnus, a, um*.

G

- gate**, *porta, ae, f*.
- gather**, come together, *conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus*.
- Gaul**, *Gallia, ae, f*.
- Gauls**, *Gallī, ōrum, m. pl*.
- general**, *imperātor, ōris, m*; *dux, ducis, m. and f*.
- German**, *Germānus, a, um*.
- Germans**, *Germānī, ōrum, m. pl*.
- Germany**, *Germānia, ae, f*.
- get a firm footing**, *-firmiter insistō, ere, stitī, —*.
- get possession of**, *potior, potirī, potītus sum*.
- get together**. See collect.
- gift**, *dōnum, ī, n*.
- girl**, *puella, ae, f*.
- give**, *dō, dare, dedī, datum*; give back, *reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus*; give up, *abiciō, icere, ēcī, iectus*; give up, desist from, *dēsistō, sistere, stitī, stitūrus*.
- glad**, *laetus, a, um*.

glory, *glōria*, *ae*, *f*.
 go, *eō*, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītus*; go back, *redeō*,
redīre, *rediī*, *reditus*; go to, visit,
adeō, *adīre*, *adīvī* or *adiī*, *aditus*.
 god, *deus*, *deī*, *m*.
 good, *bonus*, *a*, *um*.
 government, *imperium*, *ī*, *n*.
 grain, *frūmentum*, *ī*, *n*.
 grant, *dō*, *dare*, *dedī*, *datus*.
 great, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*; how great,
quantus, *a*, *um*.
 greedy, *avidus*, *a*, *um*; *cupidus*, *a*, *um*.

H

handwriting, *manus*, *ūs*, *f*.
 happens, it happens, comes to pass,
 the result is, *accidit*, *isse*; *contingit*,
contigisse, *contigit*; *fit*, *fieri*, *factum*
est; these verbs are often used with
 a substantive clause as subject.
 happy, *beātus*, *a*, *um*.
 harass, *laccēsō*, *cessere*, *cessīvī* or *īī*,
cessītus.
 hardly, *vix*, *adv*.
 harm, *dētrīmentum*, *ī*, *n*.
 hasten, make haste, *matūrō*, *āre*, *āvī*,
ātus.
 hate, *ōdī*, *ōdisse*, *perf*. with *pres*.
 meaning.
 haul, draw, *dūcō*, *dūcere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*;
trahō, *ere*, *trāxī*, *trāctus*.
 have, *habeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *ītus*.
 he, she, it, *is*, *ea*, *id*.
 hear, *audiō*, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītus*.
 height, depth, *altitūdō*, *inis*, *f*.
 help, *succurrō*, *ere*, *succurrī*, *succur-*
sus; *iuvō*, *āre*, *iūvī*, *iūtus*.
 here, *hīc*, *adv*.; to be here, *adsum*.
 hesitate, *dubitō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
 high, deep, *altus*, *a*, *um*.
 highest, *summus*, *a*, *um*.

hill, *collis*, *is*, *m*.
 himself, herself, itself. See 66.
 hinder, *impediō*, *īre*, *īvī*, *ītus*,
 ENTANGLE, EMBARRASS, HINDER;
reprimō, *ere*, *pressī*, *pressus*, PRESS
 BACK, KEEP BACK, RESTRAIN, HIN-
 DER.
 hindrance, *impedimentum*, *ī*, *n*.
 his, her, its, *suus*, *a*, *um*, when refer-
 ring to the same person or thing as
 the subject of its sentence, other-
 wise *eius*. See 67.
 hitherto, *adhūc*, *adv*.
 hold, *teneō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentus*.
 home, homeward, *domum*; at home,
domī.
 hope, *spēs*, *speī*, *f*.; to hope, *spērō*,
āre, *āvī*, *ātus*.
 horse, *equus*, *ī*, *m*.
 hostage, *obses*, *obsidis*, *m*. and *f*.
 hour, *hōra*, *ae*, *f*.
 house, *domus*, *ī* (*ūs*), *f*., the generic
 word; *tectum*, *ī*, *n*., that which
 covers, THE ROOF, by metonymy,
 HOUSE; at the house of, *apud* and
ad, *preps*. w. *acc*.
 how great, *quantus*, *a*, *um*.
 how many, *quot*, *indecl*. *adj*.; *quam*
multī, *ae*, *a*.
 hundred, *centum*, *indecl*.
 hurl, *coniciō*, *icere*, *iēcī*, *iectus*.

I

I, *ego*. See 64.
 if, *sī*, *conj*.; if only, *modo*, *dum*, *dum*
modo, *conjs*.
 ignorant, *īgnārus*, *a*, *um*.
 illustrious, *clārus*, *a*, *um*.
 implore, invoke, call upon, *vocō*, *āre*,
āvī, *ātus*.
 important. See 29.

in, *in*, prep. w. abl.
 in the vicinity of, *ad*, prep. w. acc.
 inactivity, *inertia*, *ae*, f.
 incite, *inflammō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
 indeed, at least, *quidem*, *adv.*; placed immediately after the emphatic word.
 infantry, *peditēs*, *um*, m. pl.; *peditātus*, *ūs*, m.
 inflict punishment, *supplicium sūmō*, *ere*, *sūmpsī*, *sūmptus*; to inflict punishment on a soldier, *de milite supplicium sumere*; *inferō*, *ferre*, *tulī*, *lātus*.
 influence, *auctoritās*, *ātis*, f.; have influence, exert influence, *valeō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itūrus*.
 inform any one, *aliquem certīorem faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*; be informed, *certior*, *fiō*, *fierī*, *factus sum*.
 inhabitant, *incola*, *ae*, m.
 injure, harm, *noceō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itūrus*.
 inquire, *quaerō*, *ere*, *quaesīvī*, *quaesītus*.
 intend, *esse in animō*, and dat.
 intercessor, *dēprecātor*, *ōris*, m.
 interest, *intersum*, *esse*, *fuī*, *futūrus*; used impersonally. See 28.
 interview, conference, *colloquium*, *ī*, n.
 into, *in*, prep. w. acc.
 invade, *ingredior*, *ī*, *ingressus*.
 invite, send for, *arcessō*, *ere*, *arcessīvī*, *arcessītus*; *invītō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
 island, *īnsula*, *ae*, f.
 it, *is*, *ea*, *id*.
 Italy, *Italia*, *ae*, f.

J

join battle, *proelium committō*, *ere*, *mīsī*, *missus*; join together, unite, *coniungō*, *ere*, *iunxī*, *iunctus*.

journey, *iter*, *itineris*, n.; to journey, *iter faciō*, *facere*, *fēcī*, *factus*.
 judge, *iūdex*, *iūdicis*, m.; *iūdicō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
 just, *aequus*, *a*, *um*.
 justice, *aequitās*, *ātis*, f.
 justly, *iūre*, abl. of manner.

K

keep, hold, *habēō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *itus*; keep, restrain, *contineō*, *ēre*, *uī*, *tentum*.
 kill, *interficiō*, *ficere*, *fēcī*, *sectus*.
 king, *rēx*, *rēgis*, m.
 know, know how, *sciō*, *scīre*, *scīvī*, *scītus*; *noscō*, *ere*, *nōvī*, *nōtus*. See 106; not know, *nesciō*, *īre*, *īvī*, —.

L

Labienus, *Lābiēnus*, *ī*, m.
 land, *terra*, *ae*, f.
 large, *māgnus*, *a*, *um*.
 lasting, *perpetuus*, *a*, *um*.
 lately, *nūper*, *adv.*
 latter, *hīc*.
 law, *lēx*, *lēgis*, f.
 lay before, report, *dēferō*, *deferre*, *dētulī*, *aēlātus*; lay waste, *vastō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.
 laziness, *pigritia*, *ae*, f.
 lazy, *piger*, *pigra*, *pigrum*.
 lead, *dūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead across, *trādūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead down, *dēdūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead out, *ēdūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*; lead to, *addūcō*, *ere*, *dūxī*, *ductus*.
 leader, *dux*, *ducis*, m. and f.
 learn, *cōgnōscō*, *ere*, *cōgnōvī*, *cōgnītus*.
 leave behind, leave, *relīnquō*, *ere*, *līquī*, *līctus*.

leave off, cease, *dēsīnō, ere, dēsīvī, dēsitus.*

left, *sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.* See remaining.

legate, *lēgātus, ī, m.*

legion, *legiō, ōnis, f.*

leisure, *ōtium, ī, n.*

less, *minor, minus*; gen. *minōris.*

lessen, *levō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

letter, *litterae, ārum, f. pl.*; *epistula, ae, f.*

liberality, *liberalitās, ātis, f.*

liberty, *libertās, ātis, f.*

lieutenant, *lēgātus, ī, m.*

life, *vīta, ae, f.*

light, daylight, *lūx, lūcis, f.*

like, *similis, e*; like, wish, *volō, velle, volūt.*

line, line of battle, *aciēs, ēī, f.*

linger around. See remain.

little, *parvus, a, um*; too little, *parum, adv.*

live, *vīvō, ere, vīxī, vīctus*; *vītam dēgō, ere, dēgī, —.*

long, long for, desire eagerly, *cupiō, cupere, cupīvī or cupīī, cupītus.*

long, a long time, longer, longest, *diū, diūtius, diūtissimō, adv.*

long, *longus, a, um*; long, as long as. See while.

long since, *iam pridem, adv.*

look at, *intueor, ērī, intuitus sum.*

love, *amor, ōris, m.*; to love, *amō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

M

make, *faciō, facere, fēcī, factus*; make an assault. See assault; make requital, *gratiam referō, referre, rettulī, relātus.*—I shall requite you, *tibi gratiam referam*; make upon, *in-*

ferō, inferre, intulī, illātus.—to make war upon the Gauls, *Gallīs bellum inferre*; make use of, *ūtor, utī, ūsus sum.*

man, *vir, virī, m.*, A MAN as distinguished from a woman; *homō, inis, m. and f.*, MAN, A HUMAN BEING.

many, *multī, ae, a*; many times, *saepe.*

march, *iter, itineris, n.*; to march, *iter faciō, facere, fēcī, factus.*

marry (of a man), *in mātrimonium dūcō*; (of a woman), *nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptus.*

may. See 118, 119.

meantime, in the meantime, *interim, intereā, advs.*

meditate. See think about.

meet, to meet, *sē obvium ferre*; you met me, *mihī tē obvium tulisti*; go to meet, *obviam* (or *obvius, a, um*) *eō, ire, ivī, itus, w. dat.*; meet with, *inveniō, ire, venī, ventus, w. acc.*

memory, *memoria, ae, f.*

messenger, *nūntius, ī, m.*

method, *ratiō, ōnis, f.*

middle, middle of, *medius, a, um.*

mile, *mille passuum.*

military affairs, *rēs militāris, rei militāris.*

mind, *mēns, mentis, f.*, UNDERSTANDING, INTELLECT, REASON; *animus, ī, m.*, WILL, DESIRE, PURPOSE; FEELING, AFFECTION, SENTIMENT.

mistake, be misunderstood, *errō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

money, *pecūnia, ae, f.*

more, *plūs, plūris, n.*; *amplius, magis, advs.*

mother, *māter, mātris, f.*

mountain, *mōns, montis, m.*

mourn, *lūgēō, ēre, lūxī, lūctus.*

move, *movēō, movēre, movē, mōvī, mōtus.*

much, *multus, a, um.*

multitude, *multitūdō, inis, f.*

must. See III.

my, *meus, a, um.*

N

name, *nōmen, nōminis, n.*; to name.

See call.

narrow, contracted, small, *parvus, a, um*; narrow limits, *angustiae, ārum, f. pl.*; *angustus, a, um.*

nature, *nātūra, ae, f.*

near, *prope, ferē, advs.*

nearest, *proximus, a, um.*

nearly, *paene, adv.*

need, *opus*, indecl. n., *ūsus, ūs, m.*

need, *egeō* or *indigeō, ēre, uī, —.*

negligence, *nēquitia, ae, f.*

neighborhood, in the neighborhood of, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

neighbors, *fīnitimī, ōrum, m. pl.*; *vīcīnus, i, m.*

neither . . . nor, *neque . . . neque, nec . . . nec.*

never, *numquam (nunquam), adv.*

nevertheless, yet, still, *tamen*; *nihilō minus*, advs.

new, *novus, a, um.*

nick of time, *discrīmen, inis, n.*

night, *nox, noctis, f.*; night before, *nox superior.*

no, *nūllus, a, um.* See 81.

nobody, no one, *nēmō*, gen. and dat. supplied from *nullus*.

not, *nōn, nē, adv.*; not even, *nē . . . quidem*, w. the emphatic word between *nē* and *quidem*.

not only . . . but also, *nōn solum . . . sed etiam.*

not yet, *nōndum, adv.*

nothing, *nihil*, indecl.

now, *nunc, iam*, advs.

numerous, *crēber, crēbra, crēbrum.*

O

oath, *iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n.*

obey, *pāreō, ēre, uī, —.*

occupy, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

officer, *lēgātus, ī, m.*

often, *saepe, adv.*

old, *senex*, gen. *senis*; old, having been born, *nātus, a, um*; he is twenty years old, *vīgintī annōs nātus est.*

on, in, prep. w. acc. after verbs of motion, w. abl. after verbs of rest.

on this side of, *cis*, prep. w. acc.

once, at once, *statim*, adv.

one, *ūnus, a, um.*

one another. See 68.

one by one, *singulī, ae, a.*

opinion, *sententia, ae, f.*, OPINION, DECISION, SENTENCE, JUDGMENT; *opīniō, ōnis, f.*, OPINION, SUPPOSITION, REPUTATION, BELIEF.

opportunity, *potestās, ātis, f.*

opposite, *adversus, a, um.*

or, aut; in double questions, *an*; or not, in direct double questions, *an nōn*; in indirect double questions, *necne*. See 80.

order, in order that, *ut*, conj. See 144.

order, by order, *iūssū*, abl. sing. m.

order, command, *iubeō, ēre, iussī, iussus*; *imperō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

ordinary, *mediocris, e.*

other, some . . . others, *aliī . . . aliī.*

ought, *dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus*; *dēbeō* denotes a moral obligation. See III.

our, *noster, nostra, nostrum.*

overcome, *superō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

own. See 69.

P

pardon, *ignōscō, ere, ignōvī, ignōtus;*
pardon for sake of, *condōnō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

parent, *parēns, entis, c.*

part, *pars, partis, f.*

patience, *patientia, ae, f.*

patriotic, *bonus, a, um; amans rei publicae.*

pay, *pendō, ere, pependī, pensus;* pay one's respects, *salūtō, āre, āvī, ātum.*

peace, *pāx, pācis, f.*

perfect, *perfectus, a, um.*

perform, *fungor, fungī, functus sum,*
EXECUTE, DISCHARGE, OBSERVE;
gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, MANAGE,
WAGE, TRANSACT, ACCOMPLISH.

peril, *periculum, ī, n.*

perilous, *periculōsus, a, um.*

perish, *pereō, īre, īī, itus.*

permit, allow, suffer, *patior, patī, passus sum.*

persist, *perseverō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

persuade, *persuādeō, suādere, suāsī, suāsus.*

pity, *miseret, miserere, miseruit.*
See 27.

place, *locus, ī, m.; pl. locī and loca, locōrum, m. and n.*

plan, *cōsiliū, ī, n.,* DETERMINATION, RESOLUTION, PURPOSE; *ratiō, ōnis, f.,* COURSE, MANNER, METHOD, FASHION.

please, *delectō, āre, āvī, ātus, w. acc.;*
placeō, ēre, uī, itus, w. dat.

pleasing, *grātus, a, um.*

pleasure, *dēlectātiō, ōnis, f.*

pledge, *fidēs, eī, f.*

plunder, pillage, *dirīpiō, ere, uī, rep-tus.*

pole, long pole, *longurius, ī, m.*

poor, *pauper, gen. pauperis.*

possession, *possessiō, ōnis, f.;* often expressed by neuter plural; *e.g. himself and his possessions, sē suaque;* take possession of, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, w. acc.;* get possession of, *potior, irī, itus sum.*

power, bodily strength, *vīs, vis, f. (pl. vīrēs).*

powerful, *potēns, gen. potentis;* powerful, to be very powerful, *plūrimum posse, or valere.*

practically acquainted with, *perītus, a, um, w. gen.*

praetor, *praetor, ōris, m.*

praise, *laus, laudis, f.;* to praise, *laudō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

prefer, *mālō, malle, mālū.*

prepare, *parō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

present, be present, *adsum, adesse, adfui.*

preserve, *cōservō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

prevent, *dēterreō, ēre, uī, itus; prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus.*

price, *pretium, ī, n.*

prisoner, *reus, ī, m.*

promise, *polliceor, ērī, pollicitus sum.*

proper, *idōneus, a, um.*

property, *rēs, rērum, f. pl.; bona, ōrum, n. pl.*

prosperity, *secundiōrēs rēs.*

provided that, *modo, dum, dum modo,* conjs. See 172.

province, *provincia, ae, f.*

provision, make provision, *provideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.*

prudence, *prudentia*, ae, f.
 punish, *pūniō, īre, īvī, ītus*.
 punishment, *supplicium*, ī, n.; to inflict punishment upon any one, *de aliquō supplicium sūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum*; to suffer punishment, *poenās persolvō, ere, solvī, solūtus; supplicium dō, ī*.
 purpose, for the purpose of, *causā*, abl. of cause and stands after its limiting genitive.
 put in charge of, *praefficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus*.
 put to death, *necō, āre, āvī, ātus*.
 put to flight, *in fugam dō, dare, dedī, datus; fugō, āre, āvī, ātus*.

Q

quarrel, *dissentiō, ōnis, f*.
 question, *quaestiō, ōnis, f*.
 quickly, *celeriter*, adv.

R

rank, line of battle, *aciēs, ēī, f*.
 rapidly, *celeriter*, adv.
 rather, more, *magis*, adv.
 read, *legō, ere, lēgī, lēctus*.
 ready, *parātus, a, um*; get ready, *comparō, āre, āvī, ātus*.
 rear, *novissimum agmen*.
 reason, cause, *causa*, ae, f.
 recall, *revocō, āre, āvī, ātus*.
 receive, *accipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptus*.
 recommend, urge, *hortor, ārī, ātus sum; cohortor*.
 redoubt, fortress, *castellum, ī, n*.
 refrain, *temperō, āre, āvī, ātus*, w. dat. of reflexive pronoun; *abstineō, ēre, uī, tentus*.
 refuse, *recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus; negō, āre, āvī, ātus*.

regard, *dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus*.
 reign, *rēgnō, āre, āvī, ātus*.
 relieve, *liberō, āre, āvī, ātus*.
 remain, stay, *remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus*.
 remaining, *reliquus, a, um*.
 remember, *meminī, meminisse; reminiscor, ī, —*.
 remind, *admoneō, ēre, uī, ītus*.
 renew, *redintegrō, āre, āvī, ātus*.
 repent, *paenitet, ēre, paenituit*.
 reply, *respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus*.
 rescue, *eripiō, eripere, eripui, ereptus*.
 residence, *domicilium, ī, n*.
 resources, *ops, opis*, f. pl.; aid (in sing.).
 rest of, *reliquus, a, um*; the rest, *ceterī, ae, a*.
 restrain, *reprimō, ēre, pressī, pressus; retineō, ēre, tinui, tentus*.
 retain, hold, *teneō, ēre, uī, tentus*.
 return, *revertor, ī, versus sum; revertō, ere, revertī*; the present, imperfect, and future tenses have the passive form; *redeō, īre, iī, ītus; reddō, ere, redidī, reditus (trans.)*.
 revolt, *rebelliō, ōnis, f*.
 revolution, new form of government, *nova imperia (n. pl.), rēs novae*.
 Rhine, *Rhēnus, ī, m*.
 rich, *arves, itis; locuplēs, ētis*, adjs.
 rigging, *fūnes, ium, m*.
 right, *iūs, iūris, n*; *dexter, dextra, dextrum*, adj.
 river, *flūmen, flūminis, n*.
 road, *via, ae, f*; *iter, itineris, n*.
 rock, *saxum, ī, n*.
 Roman, *Rōmānus, a, um*.
 Rome, *Rōma, ae, f*.
 route, *fugō, āre, āvī, ātus*.

rule, *rēgnum, ī, n.*; *imperium, ī, n.*; *regō, regere, rēxi, rēctus*; rule over, *imperō, āre, āvī, ātus, w. dat.*

run, *currō, ere, cucurrī, cursus.*

S

safe, *tūtus, a, um, WELL GUARDED, SECURE, OUT OF DANGER*; *salvus, a, um, incolumis, e, UNHARMED, UN-INJURED, WELL, SOUND.*

safety, *salūs, ūtis, f.*

sake, for the sake of, *causā.*

same, the same, *īdem, eadem, idem.*

save, *servō, āre, āvī, ātus*; *cōservō, āre, āvī, ātus*; *cōservō* is *servō* intensified by the prefix *cōn* and properly signifies KEEP THOROUGHLY, SAVE COMPLETELY.

say, *aicō, aicere, dixī, dictus*; say not, *negō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

scatter, rout, *fugō, āre, āvī, ātus.*

scheme. See **plan**.

sea, *mare, maris, n.*

seal, *signum, ī, n.*

see, *videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.*

seek, *petō, ere, petīvī, petītus.*

seem, *videor, ēri, vīsus sum.*

seize, *occupō, āre, āvī, ātus*; *capīō, ere, cōpī, captus*; *comprehendō, ere, comprehendī, comprehēnsus.*

self, *ipse, a, um.*

sell, *vendō, ere, vendidī, vendītus.*

senate, *senātor, ōris, m.*

send, *mittō, ere, misī, missus.*

Sequani, *Sequanī, ōrum, m. pl.*

set fire to, *incendō, ere, cendī, cēnsus.*

set out, march, depart, *proficīscor, ī, profectus sum.*

several. See **many**.

severe, *gravis, e.*

she, generally omitted. See 64.

shield, *scūtum, ī, n.*

ship, *nāvis, is, f.*

short, *brevis, e.*

show, *doceō, ēre, uī, doctus.*

shudder at, *horreō, ēre, no perf., no sup., governs acc.*

sick, *aeger, aegra, aegrum.*

side, on this side of, *cis, prep. w. acc.*

signal, *signum, ī, n.*

silent, keep silent, *taceō, ēre, uī, itum.*

since, *cum, quoniam, conjs.* See 87.

sister, *soror, ōris, f.*

sit, be seated, *sedeō, ēre, sēai, sessus.*

six, *sex, indecl.*

sixteen, *sēdecim, indecl.*

size, *māgnitūdō, inis, f.*

skillful, practically acquainted with, *perītus, a, um.*

slaughter, *occīdō, ere, cīdī, cīsus.*

slave, *servus, ī, m.*

slay, kill, *interficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus.*

small, *parvus, a, um.*

so, *tam, ita, sic, advs.*; so great, *tantus, a, um.*

soldier, *mīles, mīlītis, m.*

some one, something, some, *aliquis, quīdam, nesciō quis.*

some . . . others, *aliī . . . aliī.*

son, *fīlius, ī, m.*

soon, as soon as possible, *quam primum.*

speak, *loquor, ī, locūtus sum*; *dīcō, ere, dixī, dīctūs.*

stand, *stō, stāre, stēfī, status.*

start out for. See **set out**.

state, *rēs publica, reī publicae, f.*

stay, *remaneō, ēre, mānsī, mansūrus.*

still, *etiam nunc, tamen, advs.*

storm, *expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus*; a storm, tempest, *tempestās, ātis, f.*

stranger, *aliēnus, ī, m.*

street, road, *via, ae, f.*
 strong, *fīrmus, a, um.*
 study, *studium, ī, n.*
 stupid, *stultus, a, um; amēns, gen. amentis.*
 subdue, pacify, *pācō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
 such, so great, *tantus, a, um; such, of such a kind, tālis, e; such . . . as, tantus . . . quantus,* when referring to size; *tālis . . . quālis,* when referring to kind, nature, quality.
 suddenly, *subitō, repente, advs.*
 suffer, *patior, patī, passus sum; allow, permitto, 3; sinō, ere, sīvī, situs; endure, perferō, 3.*
 suicide, to commit suicide, *mortem,* dat. of reflex., *cōnscīscō, scīscere, scīvī, scītus.*
 suitable, *idōneus, a, um.*
 summon, *vocō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
 supplies, *commeātus, ūs, m.,* used in both sing. and pl.; supplies (of grain), *rēs frūmentāria.*
 suppose, *exīstimō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
 surely, *profectō, adv.*
 surpass, excel, *antecellō, ere, no perf. nor sup.; praecēdō, ere, cēssi, cēssus; superō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
 surrender, *dēdō, ere, dedīdī, deditus; a surrender, dēditiō, ōnis, f.*
 surround, *circumdō, are, dedī, datus; circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus.*
 swamp, *palūs, ūdis, f.*
 sword, *gladius, ī, m.*

T

table, *mēnsa, ae, f.*
 take, *capīō, capere, cēpī, captus; take away, removeō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus; take from, ēripīō, ēripere, ēripūī,*

ēreptus; take part, be engaged in anything, versor, ārī, ātus sum; take possession of, occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, w. acc.; take the lead of, praesum esse, fuī, futūrus.
 task, *pēnsūm, ī, n.*
 tax, *stipendium, ī, n.*
 teach, *doceō, ēre, docuī, doctus.*
 tell, *dīcō, ere, dixī, dictus; nārrō, āre, āvī, ātus.*
 temple, *templum, ī, n.*
 ten, *decem, indecl.*
 terrify, *perterreō, ēre, uī, itus.*
 territory, *fines, ium, m. pl.; ager, agrī, m.*
 than, *quam, adv. See 42.*
 thank, *gratiās agō, agere, ēgī, actus.*
 thankful, feel thankful, *gratiam habēō, ēre, uī, itus.*
 that, *ille, is; that, in order that, ut; that not, nē, ut nōn.*
 the . . . the, *quantō . . . tantō; quō . . . eō.*
 one . . . the other, *alter . . . alter; the one party . . . the other, alterī . . . alterī.*
 their, *suus, a, um,* when referring to same person or thing as the subject of its sentence, otherwise, *eōrum.*
 there, in that place, *ibi, adv.*
 they, generally omitted. See 64.
 thing, circumstance, reason, etc., *rēs, reī, f.*
 think, *putō, āre, āvī, ātus; arbitror, ārī, ātus sum; think upon, think of, cogitō, āre, āvī, ātus, w. acc.*
 third, *tertius, a, um.*
 this, *hīc, is.*
 though, although, *cum, w. subj. See 87, 6.*

thousand, *mille*, indecl. in sing.; pl., *mīlia*, *iūm*.

three, *trēs*, *tria*.

through, throughout, *per*, prep. w. acc.

till, until, *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, conj.

See 156.

time, *tempus*, *oris*, n.; for all time, *in perpetuum*, sc. *tempus*; at one and the same time, *simul*, adv.; now for a long time, *iam diū*, *iam dūdum*, advs.; the second time, a second time, *iterum*, adv.

to, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

to-day, *hodiē*, adv.

towards, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

town, *oppidum*, *ī*, n.

troops, *cōpiae*, *ārum*, f. pl.; *mīles*, *itis*, m.; *manus*, *ūs*, m.

true, *vērus*, *a*, *um*.

trust, hope, *spērō*, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.

trusting to, *frētus*, *a*, *um*, w. abl.

try, *experior*, *īrī*, *expertus sum*.

twice, *bis*, num. adv.

two, *duo*, *duae*, *duo*.

U

unbroken, *integer*, *gra*, *grum*.

under, *sub*, prep. w. acc.

understand, *intelligō*, *ere*, *lēxī*, *lectus*.

undertake, carry out, perform, *cōnficiō*, *ficere*, *fēcī*, *fectus*.

unexpected, *inopīnāns*, *antis*.

unfortunate, *miser*, *miserā*, *miserum*.

unless, *nisi*, conj.

unpopularity, *invidiā*, *ae*, *f*.

until, till, *dum*, *donec*, *quoad*, conj.

See 156.

unwilling, *invītus*, *a*, *um*; be unwilling, *nolō*, *nolle*, *nolūī*.

unworthy, *indīgnus*, *a*, *um*.

upon, *in*, prep. w. acc.

urge, *cohortor*, *ārī*, *ātus sum*.

use, *ūsus*, *ūs*, m.; *ūtor*, *ūti*, *ūsus sum*.

V

valor, *virtūs*, *ūtis*, *f*.

valuable. See 29.

very, *valdē*, adv.; when a noun is to be emphasized, *ipse* is used; e.g. the very city, *urbs ipsa*.

very much, *vehementer*, adv.

vicinity, in or into the vicinity of, *ad*, prep. w. acc.

victor, *vīctor*, *ōris*, m.

victory, *vīctōria*, *ae*, *f*.

village, *vīcus*, *ī*, m.

violence, *vīs*, *vis*, *f*.

virtue, *virtūs*, *ūtis*, *f*.

voice, *vōx*, *vōcis*, *f*.

vote, *cēnsēō*, *ēre*, *cēnsuī*, *cēnsus*.

W

wage, carry on, *gerō*, *ere*, *gessī*, *gestus*.

wait for, await, wait to see, *expectō* (*expectō*), *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*.

wall, *mūrus*, *ī*, m., the general term; *moenia*, *iūm*, n. pl., CITY WALLS, RAMPARTS, BULWARKS; *pariēs*, *parietis*, m., WALL OF A HOUSE.

war, *bellum*, *ī*, n.

warn, *moneō*, *ēre*, *monuī*, *monitus*.

way, *via*, *ae*, *f*.

weapon, *tēlum*, *ī*, n.

weary, *dēfessus*, *a*, *um*.

well, *bene*, adv.

when, *cum*, *ubi*, *ut*. See 152, 153.

where, *ubi*, adv.

whether, *utrum*, num, —*nē*. See 80.

while, *dum*, conj.; for a little while, *paulisper*, adv.; a little while ago, *paulō ante*. See 87.

- who**, which, what, *quī, quae, quod*,
rel. pron.; *quis, quae, quid*, and *quī,*
quae, quod, interrog. pron. and adj.
- whole**, wholly. See **all**.
- why**, *cūr, quid*.
- wide**, *lātus, a, um*.
- width**, *lātitudō, inis, f*.
- wife**, *uxor, ōris, f*; *coniunx, ugis, f*.
- willing**, be willing, *volō, velle, voluī*.
- wing**, *cornū, ūs, n*.
- winter**, *hiems, hiemis, f*; pass the
winter, *hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus*; winter
quarters, *hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., sc.*
castra.
- wisdom**, *sapientia, ae, f*.
- wise**, *sapiēns, gen. sapientis*.
- wish**, desire, be willing, *volō, velle,*
voluī.
- with**, in company with, *cum*, prep. w.
abl.; with, near to, at the house of,
apud, prep. w. acc.; with respect to,
dē, prep. w. abl.
- withdraw**, *dēficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus*;
to withdraw from allegiance to the
king, *ā rēge dēficere*; withdraw, be-
take one's self, *sē recipiō, cipere,*
cēpī, ceptus; *sē cōnferō, 3*.
- without**, *sine*, prep. w. abl.; be with-
out, *careō, ēre, uī, itus, w. abl.*
- withstand**, *obstō, stāre, stitī, stātus,*
w. dat.; *sustineō, ēre, uī, tentus,*
w. acc.
- witness**, *testis, m. and f*; witness, see,
videō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus.
- wonder**, *mīror, ārī, ātus*.
- work**, *labor, ōris, m*; *labōrō, āre, āvī,*
ātus.
- worthy**, *dīgnus, a, um*; it is worth
while, *tantū est*.
- write**, *scrībō, ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus*.
- wrong**, *iniuria, ae, f*; wrong-doing,
mischief, *maleficium, ī, n*.

Y

- year**, *annus, ī, m*.
- yesterday**, *hesternō diē*.
- yet**, *tamen*, adv.
- you**, *tū*. See 64.
- your**, *tuus, a, um*, when addressing
one person; *vester, vestra, vestrum*,
when addressing more than one.
- yourself**, *tuī*, etc. See 66, 69.
- youth**, a young man, *iuvenis, is, m*;
adulēscēns, entis, m. and f.

Z

- zeal**, *studium, ī, n*. -

GRAMMATICAL INDEX

[FIGURES REFER TO SECTIONS]

- Ablative, syntax of, 39-52; abl. of accompaniment, 46; of cause, 43; of degree of difference, 48; of manner, 45; of material, 40; of means, 43; of source, 40; of price, 50; of quality, 49; of separation, 39; of specification, 47; of time, 51; with a comparative, 42; with deponents (*utor, fruor*, etc.), 44; with *ex* or *dē* for partitive gen., 23; abl. absolute, 89.
- āc* (*atque*), with *īdem*, 76.
- Accompaniment, expressed by *cum* and abl., 46.
- Accusative, syntax of, 12-18; cognate acc., 13; double acc., 14-15; of duration of time, 16; of exclamation, 18; of extent of space, 16; of place to which, 17; with verbs of aiding, pleasing, etc., 32, 1; with verbs of pitying, repenting, etc., 27; with verbs of remembering, etc., 25, 2.
- Accusing, etc., verbs of, with gen., 26.
- Action, nouns of, 21.
- adiuvō*, 32, 1.
- Adjectives, agreement of attributive adjs., 5; agreement of predicate adj., 6; agreement with natural gender, 7; gen. with adjs., 24.
- Agent, expressed by dat., 95; by *ā*, ab with abl., 41.
- Agreement, of adjs., 5-7; of appositives, 1-2; of predicate nouns, 4; of collective noun and a verb, 9; of subject and predicate, 10; of verb, 8.
- aliquis*, 72.
- alius*, distinction from *alter*, 73.
- Although, 171, 87, 6.
- an*, in direct questions, 80.
- Answers, 81.
- Antecedent, incorporation of, 71, 5; agreement of relative with, 71, 1, 2; sometimes omitted, 71, 3.
- antequam*, 154.
- Apposition, 1-3; appositive = English clause of time, etc., 3.
- As soon as, 152.
- Before, with clauses, 154.
- causā*, with gen. of gerund, etc., 142, 2.
- Causal clauses, with *cum*, 173, 2; with *quod, quia, quoniam*, 173, 1; expressed by participle, 87, 3.
- Causal relatives, 173, 4.
- Cause, abl. of, 22.
- Characteristic, gen. of, 22; abl. of, 49; relative clauses of, 174.
- Collective noun with singular verb, 9.

- Comparative, with or without **quam**, 42.
- Concession, expressed by participle, 87, 6.
- Concessive clauses, 171.
- Conditions, 121-127; contrary to fact, 123; apodosis in indicative, 123; future ("less vivid"), 125; future ("more vivid"), 124; simple (where apodosis states a fact), 122; in ind. disc., 169; expressed by participle, 87, 2.
- Conjunctions, list of, and uses, 82.
- cum**, causal, 173, 2; concessive, 171, 2; temporal, 153; clauses with = English perf. participle, 85, 2; = English present passive participle, 85, 3.
- cum primum** = as soon as, 152.
- cupiō**, constr. with, 148, 3.
- Dative, syntax of, 31-37; reference, 36; of agent, 95; of indirect object, 31; of interest, 36; of possessor, 34; of purpose or end, 37; with verbs compounded with prepositions (**ad**, **ante**, etc.), 32; with adjectives, 35; retained with passive of intransitives, 32, 2.
- dēbeō**, past tenses with pres. inf., 112.
- Declaratory sentences in ind. disc., 160.
- Degree of difference, abl. of, 48.
- Deliberative subjunctive, 110.
- Demonstrative pronouns, 58-61.
- Deponents, with abl., 44; participles of, 85, 1.
- Descriptive genitive, 22.
- Direct reflexive, 65, 1.
- Discourse, indirect. See Indirect discourse.
- Disjunctive questions. See Double questions.
- domus**, constr., 17, 1, 3.
- Double dative, 37.
- Double questions, 80.
- Doubting, verbs of, constr., 136.
- dum**, in proviso, 172; representing present passive participle, 85, 3; = until, 156; = while, 102, 2.
- dum modo**, in proviso, 172.
- Duration of time, acc. of, 16.
- etsi** = even if, 171, 3.
- Exclamation, in the acc., 18.
- Extent of space, acc. of, 16.
- Fearing, verbs of, constr., 135.
- Feeling, nouns of, 21.
- For, with temporal expressions, 16.
- Forgetting, verbs of constr. with, 25.
- Future time, in the subjunctive, 94.
- Genitive, syntax of, 20-29; with adjectives, 24; with nouns of action or feeling, 21; of charge, 26; of indefinite value, 29; objective, 21, 2; partitive, 23; with verbs of accusing, 26; with impersonal verbs, 27; with **interest**, etc., 28; with verbs of remembering, etc., 25.
- Gerund and gerundive, syntax of, 91-95; gerund and gerundive distinguished, 91, 92; cases of gerund, 91; gerundive used instead of gerund, 93; gerundive denoting necessity or obligation, 95; gerundive of intransitive verbs used impersonally, 95, 2; gerundive with **meī**, **tuī**, **suī**, etc., 93, 2.
- hīc**, 59.
- Hindering, verbs of, constr., 150.

- Historical present, 102, 1.
- Historical tenses, 131, 2.
- Hortatory subjunctive, 115; in ind. disc., 162, 3.
- iam, iam diū**, etc., with pres. and imp. tenses, 102, 3, 103, 2.
- idem**, 76.
- ille**, 61.
- Imperative, 114; in ind. disc., 162, 2.
- Impersonal verbs with gen., 27.
- Indefinite pronouns, 72.
- Indicative mode, tenses of, 102-106; conditions contrary to fact, 123, 1.
- Indirect discourse, 158-169; tenses of infin. in, 161; tenses of subjunctive in, 166; conditions in, 169; hortatory subjunctive in, 162, 3; imperative in, 162, 2; questions in, 134; wishes in, 162, 3.
- Indirect questions, 134.
- Indirect reflexive, 65, 2.
- Infinitive, formation of, 109; as object, 148; in ind. disc., 160; tenses of, 161.
- Instrument. See Means.
- inter nōs, sē**, etc., 68.
- Interest, expressed by dat., 36.
- interest**, const. with, 28.
- Interrogative pronouns, 75, 79.
- Intransitive verbs, with dat., 32; used impersonally in the passive, 32, 2.
- ipse**, 74.
- is**, 63.
- Islands, names of small, in constr. of place, 17.
- iste**, 60.
- iubeō**, with acc., 32, 1; with infin., 148, 1.
- licet**, 119.
- Manner, abl. of, 45; expressed by participle, 87, 4.
- Material, abl. of, with **ex**, 40.
- Means, abl. of, 43; means and agent distinguished, 43, 1; expressed by participle, 87, 5.
- Measure of difference. See Degree.
- miseror**, constr. with, 27, 1.
- modo**, in proviso, 172.
- nātus**, with abl. of origin or source, 40.
- nē**, with verbs of fearing, 135; in object clauses, 147; with verbs of hindering, 150.
- ne . . . an**, in double questions, 80.
- Necessity, expressed by the gerundive, 95.
- Negative command. See Prohibition.
- Negatives, with connectives, 82, 7.
- No, 81.
- nōn dubitō** = not to hesitate, 136, 1.
- nōnne**, in questions, 78, 2.
- nostrūm** and **vestrūm**, as partitive gen., 64, 1.
- num**, in indirect questions, 78, 3.
- Object clauses, 146.
- Objective genitive, 21, 2.
- Obligation, expressed by gerundive, 95.
- omnis**, contrasted with **quisque**, 72, 2.
- Origin or source, abl. of, 40.
- Participles, formation of, 85; English present = Latin perf. of some deponent verbs, 85, 4; expresses time, cause, manner, etc., 87; perf. active, how represented in Latin, 85, 2; present passive, how represented in Latin, 85, 3.

- Partitive genitive, 23; substitutes for, 23, 1.
 Passive, of intransitive verbs, 32, 2.
 Periphrastic conjugation, 94, 95.
 Personal pronouns, 64.
 Pity, verbs of, constr., 27.
 Polite subjunctive, 118.
 Possessive pronouns, 67, 69.
 Possessor, dat. of, 34.
postquam, posteaquam, constr. with, 152.
 "Potential" subjunctive, 118.
 Predicate nouns, 4.
 Prepositions, in composition with verbs, 33.
 Present, historical, 102, 1; sequence with, 131, 2 (*a*).
 Price, abl. of, 50.
 Primary tenses. See Principal Tenses.
 Principal tenses, 131.
priusquam, 154.
 Prohibition, 116.
 Pronouns, syntax, etc., 58-76.
 Provided that (*proviso*), 172.
 Purpose, clauses of, 141-143.
 Quality, gen. of, 22; abl. of, 49.
quam, in comparisons, 42.
quamquam, 171.
quamvis, 171.
 Questions, direct, 78, 79; double or disjunctive, 80; indirect, 134; of doubt, indignation, etc., 110; rhetorical, 163.
quī, preceded by *is*, 63, 1; in result clauses, 145, 1; in purpose clauses, 143, 1.
quia, 173, 1.
quidam, 72; quīdam ex instead of gen. of whole, 23, 1.
quilibet, 72.
quīn, with verbs of hindering, 150, 2; with verbs of doubting, 136.
quis (indefinite), 72.
quisquam, 72.
quisque, distinguished from *omnis*, 72, 2; with a superlative, 72, 3.
quīvis, 72.
quō, in purpose clauses, 143, 2.
quoad = until, 156.
quod (causal), 173, 1.
quōminus, with verbs of hindering, 150.
quoniam, 173, 1.
 Reciprocals, 68.
refert = it concerns, 28.
 Reflexive pronouns, 65, 66.
 Relative clauses, in general, 71, 175; characteristic, 174; of cause and concession, 173, 4; of purpose, 143, 1; of result, 145, 1.
 Remembering, verbs of, constr. with, 25.
 Result, clauses of, 144, 145.
rūs, constr., 17, 1.
sē, 66, 69.
 Secondary tenses. See Historical tenses.
 Separation, abl. of, 39.
 Sequence of tenses, 131, 132.
simul atque (āc) = as soon as, 152.
 Specification, abl. of, 47.
 Subjunctive, deliberative, 110; hortatory, 115; of polite or modest assertion, 118; "potential," 118; in prohibitions, 116, 2; in wishes (optative), 129; of characteristic, 174; in causal clauses, 173, 4; in purpose clauses, 141-143; in result clauses, 145, 1; in object clauses,

- 146, 147; in temporal clauses, 153, 154, 156; in conditions, 123, 125; in concessive clauses, 171; in clauses of proviso, 172; tenses of, in ind. disc., 166; future time in, 94.
- suī**, with gerundive, 93, 2.
- Supine, syntax of, 96.
- suus**, 67, 69.
- tālis**, use of is like, 63, 3.
- Temporal clauses, 152-156; with **dum**, 102, 1, 155, 156; with **antequam** and **priusquam**, 154.
- Tenses, of participle, 84, 85; of indicative, 102-106; historical, defined, 131, 2; of infinitive, 108, 109; of subjunctive in ind. disc., 166; principal, defined, 131; sequence of, 132.
- That, 158, caution.
- Time, how long, 16; when or within what period, 51; clauses of, expressed by participle, 87, 1.
- Towns, in constructions of place to which, 17.
- Until, 154, 2, 156.
- ut**, in clauses of result, 145; of purpose, 143; = as, when, in temporal clauses, 152; with verbs of fearing, 135; in object clauses, 147.
- ut primum** = as soon as, 152.
- ūtor**, etc., constr. with, 44.
- utrum . . . an**, in double questions, 80.
- Value, indefinite, gen. of, 29.
- Verbs, agreement with subject, 8; with two acc., list, 14, 15; with gen., list, 25, 26; with dat., list, 32, 33; with abl., list, 44; with inf. as object, list, 148, 3; taking object clauses, list, 147; with ind. disc., 160.
- Vestrūm**. See **Nostrūm**.
- Want, verbs of, with abl., 39.
- Wishes, 128, 129; in ind. disc., 162, 3.
- Yes, 81, 2.

Lane's Latin Grammars

LANE'S LATIN GRAMMAR \$1.50

FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES. By GEORGE M. LANE, Ph.D., LL.D., Late Professor Emeritus in Harvard University.

In many respects this is the most thorough, philosophical, and complete Latin Grammar ever published in this country, representing, as it does, the crowning work and ripest conclusions of one of the most eminent teachers of the language. The work has the distinction, rarely accorded to a text-book, of being regarded both as a literary and as a scientific event. Its preparation engaged the author, during the intervals of teaching at Harvard University, for nearly thirty years. After his death the work was taken up and completed by his colleague, Dr. Morris H. Morgan, of Harvard University. Some of the distinguishing features and merits of the book are comprehensiveness and accuracy in detail, precision of definition and statement, combined with a remarkably clear arrangement and singular aptness of illustration. The supplementary aids are an important feature. These include a chapter on Versification written by Dr. Herman W. Hayley, a former pupil of Professor Lane, and brief expositions of such important subjects as Rules of Quantity and Figures of Prosody, Occasional Peculiarities of Verbs, Indirect Discourse, Use of Pronouns and Numerals. The book contains also a complete Index of Subjects and an Index of Latin Words with references.

LANE AND MORGAN'S SCHOOL LATIN GRAMMAR . . . \$1.00

Prepared by MORRIS H. MORGAN, Ph.D., LL.D., Professor of Classical Philology in Harvard University.

This book is intended for the use of students of Latin during their course in secondary schools. It is based on "Lane's Latin Grammar for Schools and Colleges," and furnished abundant material for careful training in Latin pronunciation, for the study of leading principles under which Latin words are formed, for thorough drill in inflections, and for acquiring a good working knowledge of the most important principles of Latin syntax and composition. The arrangement of the material is clear and logical with cross-references to the to the larger grammar.

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

REVISED EDITION

VIRGIL'S AENEID

With an Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary by **HENRY S. FRIEZE**, late Professor of Latin in the University of Michigan. Revised by **WALTER DENNISON**, Professor of Latin in the University of Michigan.

First Six Books \$1.30 Complete \$1.50
Complete Text Edition \$0.50

This Work differs in many respects from the former edition. Such changes and alterations have been introduced as are necessary to make the book conform to modern demands, and many important additions have also been made.

The Introduction has been enlarged by the addition of sections on the life and writings of Virgil, the plan of the Aeneid, the meter, manuscripts, editions, and helpful books of reference.

The Text has been corrected to conform to the readings that have become established, and the spellings are in accord with the evidence of inscriptions of the first century A.D. To meet the need of early assistance in reading the verse metrically, the long vowels in the first two books are fully indicated.

The Notes have been thoroughly revised and largely added to. The old grammar references are corrected and new ones (to Harkness's Complete, Lane & Morgan's, and Bennett's Grammars) added. The literary appreciation of the poet is increased by parallel quotations from English literature. The irregularities of scansion in each book are also given with sufficient explanations.

The Vocabulary has been made as simple as possible and includes only those words occurring in the Aeneid. The parts of compound words are not indicated separately when they appear unmodified in the compound form. The principal parts of verbs are given which are understood to be in actual use.

The Illustrations for the most part are new and fresh, and have been selected with great care with a view to assisting directly in the interpretation of the text. There are also maps showing the wanderings of Aeneas, the vicinity of Cumae, and pre-historic Rome, and a full-page facsimile of one of the best manuscripts of Virgil, the Codex Palatinus.

American Book Company, Publishers

HARKNESS AND FORBES'S

Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War

With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. By ALBERT HARKNESS, Ph. D., LL.D.,
Professor Emeritus in Brown University. Assisted by CHARLES H. FORBES, A. B.,
Professor of Latin in Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass.
Price, \$1.25

THIS WORK is preëminently a student's edition of Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War, and has been prepared with special reference to the present needs of preparatory and secondary schools. While it is remarkable for its simplicity, yet it contains everything which is needed for studying the author. Attention is called particularly to the following special features of the book :

1. This edition is furnished with an Introduction containing an outline of the life of Caesar, a description in brief of the scenes of his military operations in Gaul, Germany, and Britain, and a short treatise on the military system of the Romans, together with a list of valuable works on subjects treated in the Introduction.

2. The text is chiefly that of the critical edition of H. Meusel, Berlin, 1894, now quite generally accepted as the standard. Each important chapter begins with a brief summary in English.

3. The notes are intended to guide the faithful efforts of the student and to interest him in the stirring events recorded in the Commentaries. Special attention has been given to the difficult subjects of the subjunctive mood and of the indirect discourse.

4. The vocabulary gives special attention to etymology, but the treatment is made as simple as possible with the sole aim of aiding the student in understanding and appreciating the significant elements of words. The important subject of idioms and phrases receives due attention.

5. The illustrations are entirely appropriate and unlike those in most other works of a similar nature. They have in no instance been introduced merely for purposes of decoration. Among the most striking features of the work are the nine colored plates illustrative of the military system of the Romans, which have been made only after consultation with the highest authorities, and are here reproduced in their natural colors. Besides these, there are many other illustrations, eleven plans of battles, seven campaign maps, and a general map of Gaul.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY
(257) PUBLISHERS

Cicero's Orations

AND SELECTIONS FROM THE LETTERS

EDITED BY

WILLIAM R. HARPER, Ph.D., D.D., LL.D.
President of the University of Chicago

AND

FRANK A. GALLUP, A.M.
Professor of Latin, Colgate Academy

Half Leather, 12mo, 566 pages, with Maps and Illustrations. Price, \$1.30

This edition of Cicero contains in addition to selected letters all the orations required by all the colleges throughout the country. It is intended to be distinctly practical and aims solely to meet the needs of secondary and preparatory schools.

The Orations have been arranged in the order in which it is thought they can be read to the best advantage and include, besides the four against Catiline, those for Archais, Milo, Marcellus, and Ligarius, Pompey's Commission, and the Fourteenth Philippic.

The Letters have been selected with special reference to their fitness for reading at sight and for this purpose they have no equal in Roman literature.

The Introduction includes a well balanced life of Cicero with a just estimate of his standing and character and many helpful features which will give the student a comprehensive knowledge of Roman life and politics.

The Notes suggest rather than tell the student and help him to get, instead of getting for him, that acquaintance with the orator and with the language which is the result of true study.

The Vocabulary shows great care and thoroughness and meets the requirements of the average student.

The Maps are accurate and drawn especially for this work and the Illustrations are happily chosen to illustrate both text and time.

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

New York
(260)

Cincinnati

Chicago

A Term of Ovid

EDITED BY CLARENCE W. GLEASON, A.M. (HARVARD)
Of Roxbury Latin School

Cloth, 12mo, 209 pages. With Notes and Illustrations. Price, 75 cents

TEN STORIES FROM THE METAMORPHOSES

I. Atalanta's Last Race. II. Pyramus and Thisbe. III. Apollo's Unrequited Love for Daphne. IV. How Phaëthon Drove His Father's Chariot. V. The Death of Orpheus. VI. The Touch of Gold. VII. Philemon and Baucis. VIII. The Impiety and Punishment of Niobe. IX. The Flood. X. Perseus and Andromeda.

This book is designed to meet the needs of students pursuing Latin Courses (1) in which but a single term is given to the study of Ovid; (2) in which this author is not taken up until after Vergil or Cicero; (3) or in which Ovid has not hitherto been included among the school texts read. It is believed that the book will be found a natural and easy link between the prose of the second or third year and the beginning of Vergil.

The first three stories are accompanied by a parallel version in the order of ordinary Latin prose with the quantities marked.

The divisions into feet and the caesuras are indicated in the first hundred lines by an unobtrusive but effective device, in order to facilitate the acquisition of the art of scansion, which is sometimes difficult.

The text is accompanied by synonyms, both of words not usual in prose and of common words in extraordinary uses. The notes are full, and are designed to meet the actual needs of the student.

The book contains a complete vocabulary with references to the text by lines.

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

Latin Literature of the Empire

Selected and Edited with Revised Texts and Brief Introductions

By ALFRED GUDEMAN, Ph.D.

Associate Professor of Classical Philology, University of Pennsylvania

In Two Volumes. Cloth, 12mo. Per Volume, \$1.80

VOL. I—PROSE. Selections from Velleius, Curtius, Seneca Rhetor, Justinus (Trogus Pompeius), Seneca, Petronius, including Cena Trimalchionis, Pliny the Elder, Quintilian, Tacitus, Pliny the Younger, Suetonius, Minucius Felix Octavius, Apuleius—Ammianus Marcellinus, and Boethius.

VOL. II—POETRY. Pseudo Vergiliana, Aetna, Manilius, Calpurnius, Nemesianus, Phaedrus, Lucan, Valerius Flaccus, Seneca, the Octavia (anonymous), Persius, Statius, Silius Italicus, Martial, Juvenal, Pervigilium Veneris, Ausonius, and Claudianus.

The works of Latin Literature of the post-Augustan period have hitherto, with a few notable exceptions, been virtually excluded from the classical curricula of colleges and universities.

The present collection has been made primarily for the use of students in higher classes in colleges. The selections will be found useful as collateral reading in connection with lectures on classical literature, and will also furnish suitable material for sight reading.

The selections themselves contain nothing—that is not eminently worthy of perusal. They are in every case sufficiently extensive to give a continuous and coherent story, which at the same time exhibits the author at his best. The text follows the best modern editions, the deviations from the standard texts being briefly recorded in critical appendices.

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

New York
(265)

• Cincinnati •

Chicago

Introduction to the Study of Latin Inscriptions

By JAMES C. EGBERT, JR., Ph.D.
Adjunct Professor of Latin, Columbia University

Half Morocco, large 12mo, 468 pages. With numerous illustrations and exact reproductions of inscriptions Price, \$3 50

This work is designed as a text-book for the use of students in Universities and Colleges, and also to furnish an account of this branch of archaeological study for general readers. It has been prepared in the belief that a knowledge of epigraphy forms an essential part of the equipment of a teacher of the classics, and that the subject itself has become so important as to justify its introduction, in elementary form at least, into the curriculum of undergraduate studies.

A distinctive feature of the book is the number and character of its illustrations,—there being over seven hundred cuts and diagrams of inscriptions, for the purpose of illustrating the text, and for practice in reading. Of these, over one hundred are photographic reproductions, showing the forms of the letters and the arrangement of the inscriptions. The work is also supplied with an exhaustive bibliography and valuable tables of abbreviations, archaisms, etc.

Copies of Egbert's Latin Inscriptions will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers :

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

Roman Life in Latin Prose and Verse

ILLUSTRATIVE READINGS FROM LATIN
LITERATURE

SELECTED AND EDITED BY

H. T. PECK, PH.D.

Professor of the Latin Language and Literature in Columbia University.

AND

ROBERT ARROWSMITH, PH.D.

Cloth, 12mo, 256 pages Price, \$1.50

This work gives a representative survey of Latin Literature, intended to be read in advanced academic or college work, as supplementary to a regular course in Latin Literature, or to be itself the fundamental work in such a course. The selections range from the popular songs which antedate written literature, to the Christian hymns of the third century, covering the early dramatists, historians, orators, philosophers, the writers of satire and epigram, the lyric and epic poets, the collectors of anecdotes, letter writers, and authors of prose works, and including other material of a popular nature, such as lampoons, parodies, epitaphs, advertisements, announcements of ball games, theatrical and gladiatorial notices, etc. To each selection is prefixed a concise account of the author, when known, and of his works, with a brief bibliography. For convenience in sight reading the text is provided with a translation of the more difficult words, and is followed by a fuller commentary on special points of interest.

Copies of Roman Life in Latin Prose and Verse will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers :

American Book Company

New York
(268)

• Cincinnati •

Chicago

Stories from Aulus Gellius

EDITED FOR SIGHT READING

BY

CHARLES KNAPP, PH.D.

Instructor in Latin, Barnard College, New York

Paper, 12mo, 93 pages Price, 30 cents

The *Noctes Atticæ* of Aulus Gellius is a representative work, since it not only reflects perfectly the nature of the subjects which engaged the attention of the literary men of the second century A.D., but also forcibly depicts the spirit in which their labors were prosecuted. Of especial interest and value are the numerous quotations from early writers whose works are no longer extant. For such portions as yet remain of the oldest Latin literature, we are almost wholly indebted to quotations by various grammarians. In this connection the obligations of Latin scholarship to Gellius are far from small. Fully two hundred and seventy-five authors are mentioned or directly quoted in his work, while the number of individual works cited is twice or thrice as large. In giving these quotations from the older writers, he often adds information concerning their careers, or their works, and in this way his contributions to our knowledge of the history of Latin literature are very valuable. For example, practically all that is known of the life of Plautus, the greatest comic poet of Rome, is derived from the third chapter of the third book of the *Noctes Atticæ*.

The commentary gives sufficient assistance to enable students to read the selections as rapidly and intelligently as possible, and without the need of any helps beyond those furnished by the book itself. The text, in point of language and spelling, is in the main that of Hertz, as given in his critical edition. Throughout the book all vowels known to be long have been carefully marked.

Copies of Knapp's Aulus Gellius will be sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price by the Publishers:

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

HORACE'S ODES, EPODES and CARMEN SAECULARE

EDITED, WITH INTRODUCTION AND COMMENTARY,
BY CLIFFORD HERSCHEL MOORE,

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND GREEK, HARVARD UNIVERSITY.

Cloth, 12mo, 465 pp. Price, \$1.50. Text edition. Price, 40 cents.

THIS edition of Horace's lyrical poems has been prepared for the needs of freshmen and sophomores. The introduction is intended to give the necessary information as to the poet's life and writings. The text is the vulgate, although in some passages the better manuscript edition has been preferred. Inasmuch as young students require no little help if they are to understand as well as translate the Odes and Epodes, the editor has not limited his commentary to the baldest aids, but has tried to give such assistance in interpretation as may help students to some appreciation of Horace's art and charm. The relation of the poet to his Greek models is shown by frequent quotations. To all the more difficult Greek passages translations have been appended. A number of quotations from the later Latin writers are also given to indicate in some degree the ready acceptance which Horace's phrases found among his successors.

*For list of the entire series and descriptive catalogue of text-books
in the Ancient Languages, write to the Publishers,*

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

NEW YORK

CINCINNATI

CHICAGO

BOSTON

ATLANTA

DALLAS

SAN FRANCISCO

Latin Dictionaries

HARPER'S LATIN DICTIONARY

Founded on the translation of "Freund's Latin-German Lexicon."

Edited by E. A. ANDREWS, LL.D. Revised, Enlarged, and in great part Rewritten by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES SHORT, LL.D.

Royal Octavo, 2030 pages . Sheep, \$6.50 ; Full Russia, \$10.00

The translation of Dr. Freund's great Latin-German Lexicon, edited by the late Dr. E. A. Andrews, and published in 1850, has been from that time in extensive and satisfactory use throughout England and America. Meanwhile great advances have been made in the science on which lexicography depends. The present work embodies the latest advances in philological study and research, and is in every respect the most complete and satisfactory Latin Dictionary published.

LEWIS'S LATIN DICTIONARY FOR SCHOOLS

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.

Large Octavo, 1200 pages . Cloth, \$4 50 ; Half Leather, \$5.00

This dictionary is not an abridgment, but an entirely new and independent work, designed to include all of the student's needs, after acquiring the elements of grammar, for the interpretation of the Latin authors commonly read in school.

LEWIS'S ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.

Crown Octavo, 952 pages. Half Leather \$2.00

This work is sufficiently full to meet the needs of students in secondary or preparatory schools, and also in the first and second years' work in colleges.

SMITH'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

A Complete and Critical English-Latin Dictionary. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D., and THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A., Fellow of University College, London. With a Dictionary of Proper Names.

Royal Octavo, 765 pages. Sheep \$4.00

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago

Greek Dictionaries

LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON

Revised and Enlarged. Compiled by HENRY GEORGE LIDDELL, D.D., and ROBERT SCOTT, D.D., assisted by HENRY DRISLER, LL.D. Large Quarto, 1794 pages. Sheep . . . \$10.00

The present edition of this great work has been thoroughly revised, and large additions made to it. The editors have been favored with the co-operation of many scholars and several important articles have been entirely rewritten.

LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON—Intermediate

Revised Edition. Large Octavo, 910 pages.

Cloth, \$3.50; Half Leather, \$4.00

This Abridgment is an entirely new work, designed to meet the ordinary requirements of instructors. It differs from the smaller abridged edition in that it is made from the last edition of the large Lexicon, and contains a large amount of new matter.

LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON—Abridged

Revised Edition. Crown Octavo, 832 pages. Half Leather \$1.25

This Abridgment is intended chiefly for use by students in Secondary and College Preparatory Schools.

THAYER'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT

Being Grimm's Wilke's Clavis Novi Testamenti. Translated, Revised, and Enlarged by JOSEPH HENRY THAYER, D.D., LL.D. Royal Quarto, 727 pages. Cloth, \$5.00; Half Leather, \$6.50

This great work embodies and represents the results of the latest researches in modern philology and biblical exegesis. It traces historically the signification and use of all words used in the New Testament, and carefully explains the difference between classical and sacred usage.

YONGE'S ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON

By C. D. YONGE. Edited by HENRY DRISLER, LL.D.

Royal Octavo, 903 pages. Sheep . . . \$4.50

AUTENRIETH'S HOMERIC DICTIONARY

Translated and Edited by ROBERT P. KEEP, Ph.D. New Edition. Revised by ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D.

12mo, 312 pages. Illustrated. Cloth . . . \$1.10

Copies sent, prepaid, to any address on receipt of the price.

American Book Company

New York

Cincinnati

Chicago





YB 41225

OCT 23 1934

Percy APR 8 1935

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



045912927

760+
P361

Pearson
221781

1787

[25m-9,'11]

